

## **LET YOURSELF BE INSTRUCTED BY JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF**

*Very few people know that from 1851 to 1864 Jesus gave a much more complete story of the events that happened during His last 3 years before His crucifixion. A much more complete gospel than what we can find in the Bible. This was revealed by Jesus Christ Himself to a man He choose, namely the Austrian Jakob Lorber who dedicated the last 24 years of his life in the service of our Lord by writing down what He dictated to him through the inner word. He heard the words very clearly in the region of his heart and wrote them faithfully down.*

*This total work consists of 25 books of 100 chapters each. An enormous valuable spiritual treasure. It is up to each individual to discover and proof the many teachings that Jesus revealed to His disciples.*

*Revelations that were not intended to reveal to the world at that time but which are now revealed in a very clear way to us.*

# Book 23

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.  
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).  
This Book 23 is translated from the German book X – Chapters 19 to 118.*

## FOREWORD

It was not the intention to make of this book an “intellectual” translation, but rather to translate it as close as possible to the original text given by Jesus Christ.

The words, expressions and even the sentence structure were kept as close as possible to the original without losing its meaning.

This work was made for every simple humble person whose main purpose it is to know the truth.

The translator

*(Table of contents on page 244)*

## 1. THE CAPTAIN ASKS FOR THE PURPOSE OF THE STRUGGLE IN NATURE



**APHAEL said:** “You have asked me a very important question, and I certainly would also be very well able to answer you, but you have much too little penetrated into the sphere of the pure spiritual, and in this way you would not understand the full truth.

[2] But I can assure you that firstly the disciples of the Lord are fully instructed about that for already a long time, and besides them, also many other people, Jews and gentiles, and secondly that also you will come to a clear understanding about this. There will be opportunities today where you will also in this respect be able to glorify and praise the love and wisdom of the Lord.

[3] Believe me that the Lord came precisely to this small hill so that at the sight of the water birds which eat the small fishes your old objections about the love, goodness and wisdom of a true God would come up. You came up with this, as I also knew a long time beforehand. And so, at the right time you will be given a correct light in this matter.

[4] Friend, life in itself is a struggle. Who, as a good and pious person, can proceed to the highest, free spiritual life if he did not first very earnestly have to fight for it? But by what else should man fight, other than by the dangers that surround him on all sides? And these were put and allowed on this Earth by the Lord so that man should recognize them and would fight against them until he would overcome them. But now enough about this, after the morning meal there will be more of this.”

[5] **When our Raphael had said that, a messenger came to tell us that the morning meal was ready, upon which we left our little hill and went to the house of Ebal to partake of the morning meal.**

[6] **After the morning meal we went directly outside, but to another bigger hill from where we not only could see the bay of**

Gennesaret but could also view a big part of the Lake of Galilee. On that hill the Romans had some kind of stronghold in order to watch from there every movement that was considered unusual on the lake and on the not unimportant bay of Gennesaret. For that reason Roman guards were always set out on that hill and they would not easily allow anyone to come there, except when the captain himself or another commanding subordinate as leader would be present in a group that wanted to visit that hill.

[7] Since the captain himself was with us now with 2 of his subordinate officers, we did not have the least of trouble to make use of that beautiful hill.

[8] Several open tents were placed there, provided with benches which the captain put in order to make use of them, and he also let a couple of new tents to be set up for us.

[9] When we took place in the tents, it was quiet for a while, and they all looked at the scenes in the shore and in the bay.

[10] Suddenly **the captain** saw several big eagles flying from the higher mountains to the lower shores of the lake and said: “There we have again some uninvited guests from that height, at the same time as always, to get a very tasteful morning meal at the shores of the lake.

[11] Although the water birds are also animals of prey that feed themselves with fishes and all kinds of other water animals, but they nevertheless seem more gentle to our mind, and their robbing and killing of innocent water animals does not make such disturbing impression on our heart and emotion than when a mighty eagle shoots down from the sky like an arrow to one of the many water birds, grabs it with its claws and carries it then to some rock, devours it there and eats its flesh.”

[12] While the captain was still expressing his human reflections, an eagle threw himself down in a field of reeds at the shore of the lake and grabbed a big pelican that was satiated with fish, and that made of course a great spectacle in the air because he was grabbed by the sharp claws of the eagle.

[13] It did not take long before the other eagles followed the

example of the first one, which made **the Roman** so angry that he walked to Me and said: “O Lord and Master, did You not see or did You not want to prevent that those greedy birds of prey attacked the more gentle water birds in a manner that is crying to Heaven for every human being with better feelings? Can such terrible scenes, which daily occur often in the world of nature, contribute to make the human heart more gentle and urge him to active neighborly love and mercy?”

[14] No, then I will remain with my old basic principles that I heard a few years ago from the mouth of an old wise Greek in Alexandria: ‘The whole Earth is a nest of robbery and a valley of tears for the noble man. For everything that he sees and that happens to him is loaded with the eternal curse of the gods. It is nothing else than a continuous existence and a miserable and quick coming into existence, and a cruel death is always the result of the existence. And must man, who is tormented most of all in his existence, still live a completely good, noble, humane life and continuously honor the cursing gods? But how can he do that when he sees only a cruel raging of the whole nature around him? So let man also, for the curse that is cast also over him from the gods, become like a lion, a tiger or an eagle and revenge himself on his fellow creatures – no matter if they are human beings or animals. Let him try to become a king and enjoy his life that is short anyway, despite of the gods.’

[15] Lord and Master, I do not say now that that wise Greek has expressed a real and true principle for the well being of men, since I have found a very different life’s principle with You according to which I also will live and act from now on. But say now You Yourself if the whole natural man – especially in a land where it swarms with all kinds of animals of prey – can as a result of his observations and experiences finally come to another basic principle for the human life on this Earth, even if he basically has a good mind, as this can often be well observed with children who are still under age.

[16] Let us look at the countries where it swarms with all kinds

of animals of prey, and the people who must continuously hunt them to prevent of being devoured by them. How are these people? They are just as wild as the animals that surround them. They rob and kill, and you cannot find any love and even less real mercy among them, and no desire or tendency to a good ordered, peaceful activity.

[17] On the other hand, if we look at a people that I once met in Armenia. In the country of that people, a former wise king exterminated very zealously as many wild animals as possible by many very skilled hunters. And also the eagles and vultures were not spared. They were only allowed to keep the gentle and useful house animals. And farming was the main activity of that people. And I say to You, o Lord and Master, that I hardly met a more gentle and peaceful little people on any continent.

[18] During the daytime and at night you can travel in that country over all big and small roads, without being afraid to be attacked by a wild animal and even less by a predatory person. And in whatever house you enter, no matter how simple it may be, they receive you in the kindest way. And with all love and kindness they serve you with everything they possess in that house with whatever man needs.

[19] And to whom should the people of that mentioned country be grateful for this excellent, good, kind and gentle way of development of the mind? To that wise king who purified his country of all wild animals of prey.

[20] For You, o Lord and Master, it would be even much easier to purify the whole Earth of all wild animals. And then the people, who would not have to fight with lions, panthers, tigers, hyena's, bears, wolves, foxes and still many other wild beasts, would, with a good education, soon look like the mentioned Armenians."

## 2. THE MOST IMPORTANT REASONS FOR THE VARIETY IN THE CREATION ON EARTH



SAID: “My friend, in a natural, worldly respect you are of course completely right, and little could be objected against it, but in the field of the soul and the spirit, which is completely unknown to you up till now, you want something from Me which is completely against every order on this Earth.

[2] Look, on a celestial body where it is the people’s destiny for what concerns their soul and their spirit to become perfect children of God, everything must be exactly arranged as it is arranged on this Earth.

[3] Although your eye can see and your reason can recognize nothing else except judgment, persecution, robbery, murder, death, decay and perishability, but it is not as you imagine these things, but quite different.

[4] Firstly the laziness, which is an inevitable attachment of the matter of the body, is the greatest enemy of the soul who must become more and more awake and active, for only through that can he become completely similar to the Spirit of God in him, and thus become similar to God. And the hotter the countries are where people have built their houses, the more they are threatened by this first enemy of the soul.

[5] If in such countries there would not be all kinds of animals that are troublesome for man, and if he did not have to take care for the nourishment of his body, then he also would not take care for the development of the powers of his soul. He soon would look like a sea polyp or like the roots of a tree that have nothing else to do except to suck to them the nutrients that are suitable to them, from the water, from the soil and from the air through its organic-mechanical system.

[6] Look, this is the most important reason why all kinds of things were created for man on this Earth which will wake him up to various activities – firstly for his body, and then also for his soul, which is the most important.

[7] For what concerns the second reason, every thinker can easily discover this for himself. Just imagine the Earth as a completely uniform big globe. On its vast surface there would be only completely the same brooks, lakes and seas. No mountains, no other animals than sheep, no birds except chickens, and no other water animals than only precisely the same kinds of fishes everywhere. In the same manner on the earth's surface there would only grow one kind of grass as nourishment for the sheep, as well as only one kind of fruit to feed the people and the chickens. Furthermore also only one kind of fruit tree and one kind of tree to build a simple dwelling hut. And so there also would be only one kind of stone everywhere, as well as only one kind of metal of which men would be able to make the simplest utensils for their livelihood.

[8] Now say for yourself how much progress the people could make in the development of their concepts, ideas and imaginations in such a world.

[9] I do not have to explain to you how extremely meager their reason and mind would look like, while they have to become more elevated and purer. But I point your attention on the very poor state of development of the soul and the spirit of the living human beings on Earth who live in regions where there are no mountains in the wide environment, where only here and there some uniform grass on the ground is growing, and furthermore some meager shrubs that are pining away at the shores of a few ugly brooks and lakes that look like pools.

[10] Such regions are not unknown to you. What does the development of the spirit of those inhabitants look like? Look, for the greatest part they are wild. And why? Because they cannot come to any development of their concepts, ideas and productive imaginations for the development of the reason and mind, because of the lack of an as great as possible variety of the things and creatures that surround them which are necessary for the higher development of the soul.

[11] On the other hand, look at those people whose country is




richly provided with all imaginable varieties, and you will discover that they have developed. If not in the sphere of the deepest inner life of the soul and spirit, then nevertheless in the sphere of the outer mind, reason and imagination, which man needs if he wants to pass over to a higher development of the inner life of the soul and spirit. For if you want to climb a mountain for the beautiful view, there firstly has to be a mountain, and when there is one, then while climbing you should not be satisfied with the half height of the mountain – although it will already give you a very wide view – but moreover make the effort to also climb the highest tops in order to enjoy the full view from there.

[12] So also, once men whose reason, mind and imagination are greatly developed, should not be satisfied with this half height of life, but make the effort to reach its full height.

[13] You will understand what I want to tell you with this. And here you have a second reason why God has provided this Earth with such great variety of all things, creatures and phenomena, of which you up till now, with all your Alexandrian development, hardly know the smallest stroke of the little alpha<sup>1</sup>.”

### **3. THE SUBSTANCE OF THE SOUL AND HIS GRADUAL LIBERATION FROM MATTER**

 HERE is however still a third reason which is already known by all My disciples, and you also will come to know this more precisely in the future than it can be explained to you now, for your inner reason would not be able to grasp this. But as an indication, I can tell you this for now: that everything, and still more, that the Earth contains, from its center up to far above the highest region of the air, is soul substance. But that substance stands for a certain time until it is

---

<sup>1</sup> The first letter of the Greek alphabet.

liberated in very different conditions of judgment, from hard to soft. And because of that, it becomes, for the physical eye as well as for the feeling of man in this world, visible and tangible, as completely dead matter, harder or tender. To these belong firstly all kinds of stones, minerals, different soils, water, air and every still unbound matter in it.

[2] Then there is the whole kingdom of the plants, in the water and on the ground, together with its transition to the animal kingdom. In that kingdom, the judgment is already milder, and the soul substance stands already more in the stage of a certain liberation compared to its former hard condition of judgment. The soul substance that was formerly as if chaotically mixed together is now, for the sake of the development of intelligence, sorted and formed as independent entities, and so you can see a great variety in this second kingdom.

[3] While the soul substance had to go through a greater sorting in the second kingdom because of its special development of intelligence, it must be brought to an ever greater unification of separate intelligences in the third kingdom of the animals – which has a much greater diversity – in order to come to a clearer and freer individual intelligence. That is why in that animal kingdom numberless soul substance particles of all kinds of different small animals combine to one bigger animal soul, for example that of a bigger worm or an insect.

[4] Once they have lost their material casing in which they were closed up, numberless different kinds of insects unify again to an animal soul of a bigger and more perfected kind. And this continues up to the big and perfected animals, which are partly wild and are later partly gentle – and only after the last unification of those animal souls will arise the human souls who are provided with all possible intelligent abilities.

[5] When man is born in this world and still has to carry a body for the sake of his complete liberation, then it is extremely wisely arranged by God that he as a complete soul cannot remember all the necessary former conditions in separate forms

of existence that he as transition had to go through. He can remember them just as little as your eye can see and distinguish the little separate drops of the sea. For if this would be given to a human soul, he would not be able to bear the unification of so endlessly different particles of soul substance and intelligence, but would try to dissolve himself as soon as possible, just like a drop of water dissolves itself on a red-hot iron.

[6] In order to preserve the soul of man, every remembrance *of former forms of existence* must be completely taken away by the arrangement of the body that encloses him, until the time that he becomes innerly completely one with his spirit of love from God. Because that spirit is as the glue by which all those endless different soul particles of intelligence are solidly unified with each other as an eternal indestructible complete being. Then they will shine through, recognize and understand each other in all clearness, and they will glorify and praise God's love, wisdom and might as a perfected being that is similar to God."

#### 4. THE COMPOSITION OF THE HUMAN SOUL



UT that a human soul, and correspondingly even his at first very clumsy body, are put together in this way, everyone who thinks and feels more deeply will more or less be able to assume from the many indications that he can discover with himself.

[2] Take the great many various notions and ideas that a soul can develop out of himself with only little training, and which he also can imagine – correctly or less correctly, that is for the moment the same – if he would not be as if put together, like a unity that contains everything in itself, he would as less as an ox or a donkey be capable to design the construction of a royal castle and build it according to that design.

[3] If you consider all the various animals in the air, like the insects and birds, as well as the animals on the solid surface of the Earth, and those in the water, then you will discover with

most of them the capability to build something. Just look at the bees and other little animals in the air that more or less look like it. Look at the very various nests of the birds, and the ants and still other insects in the soil, the spiders and the caterpillars. Furthermore all sorts of mouse, the beaver that builds a precise hut, the foxes, wolves, bears and still a great number of other animals, and see how they build and arrange their habitations very efficiently for themselves. Look furthermore at the various animals in the sea, especially the crustaceans. Then you will see with them such great capability to build that it often even very much amazes the best architect.

[4] Now, every animal, from the smallest to the biggest, has of course its own very simple building capability that is typical to the intelligence of its animal soul. It moreover knows the building material and always uses it in its own way and manner. But in the human soul a very large number of all those animal-intelligent building capabilities are present, and from them, he can, as it were through a silent awareness, put also a very large number of concepts and ideas together, and so he can create completely new and great forms.

[5] And so man can, when he is somehow developed, personally invent all kinds of houses in a very large variety, and countless other things, and also accomplish them with his will, reason and zeal. Could he do that if in his soul all those various capabilities would not be present in the manner that was described? Certainly not, for even the next most intelligent animal after man has no imagination and has therefore also no all-embracing talent to give form to things.


[6] Now you say by yourself: ‘Yes, but why must a human soul actually acquire those abilities by means of such a long and weary way?’

[7] And I say to you: the eternal, best and most wise Master Builder of all things and beings knows best of all why He has planned it that way on this Earth for the development of a perfected human soul, and My word in this should be sufficient

for you. When you will be more perfected in yourself, you will also realize the reason for your long and weary way.

[8] You Romans, the Greeks and the Phoenicians and also the Egyptians believed in the migration of the soul, and still believe in it today, just like the Persians, Indians, the Sihinites<sup>1</sup> on the other side of the high mountains in the vast, big and far east, and another large people<sup>2</sup> that live further to the east on big islands that are surrounded by the greatest sea of this Earth – and also still many other tribes on the vast Earth. But the truth, which was very well known by the first fathers of the Earth, is distorted everywhere and completely wrong because in course of time very imperious men stood up. They were teachers at first but later became priests full of greediness and lust for power. Because the true facts about the migration of the souls would not yield any offerings and interest to them, and that is why they let the human souls migrate again in the animals and let them suffer in those animals, out of which suffering only the priests could deliver them in return of great offerings.”

## 5. THE DECLINE OF THE PURE DOCTRINE

UT’ you say now to yourself, ‘how could a people who already possessed the truth be so foolish to allow those evil and deceitful priests to make them dumb and blind?’

[2] I say to you: nothing was easier than that. The old, true wise men disappeared from the Earth in the course of time, and already during their earthly life certain magicians and fortunetellers came to the forefront who confirmed their teaching with all kinds of wonders that were shown to them by an evil spirit and were considered as divine proof by the blind people who were completely ignorant of those deceptions. And

---

<sup>1</sup> The Chinese.

<sup>2</sup> The Japanese.

in this way the people – who are very fond of wonders everywhere – could be easily completely drawn away from the old truth. And the false sages, to their own advantage, could always make them firmly believe no matter what they wanted to teach them.

[3] Many of such magicians, out of whom soon priests and false prophets arose, knew, and still know now, the art to for instance fake their voice so that from a distance the people heard it as if it came from a tree or from an animal.

[4] They imitated the sound of the voice and also the accent of known people who died, by which it seemed as if that voice came from a tree, stone, spring or also randomly no matter what animal. And this so much deceitfully real that every present person had to say: ‘Yes, that is the soul of our well known deceased one who was moreover an old, good and truthful person. What could he have done wrong against God that his soul must now languish in a camel and must certainly suffer a lot?’

[5] Who was faster to give an answer than that magician-priest who could fake his voice? Soon the scared audience heard the following sentence from the camel: ‘I with my whole house wanted to stay strictly with the doctrine of the old fathers, and by that I despised the new sages and prophets who are awakened by God. Thus I have sinned and I am now banished for 10 years in this camel to suffer unbearably. Believe the new prophets of God and give them as penance for my sin an offering that they want from the treasures that I have left behind, then they will ask God for mercy for me and I will be freed from my great torment, and later you will be free from it after your physical death.’

[6] After such answer from the camel it is very understandable that very soon the blind people left the old truth and believed firmly in the doctrines of the false prophets.

[7] And as it was before, so it will happen again after Me if not every caution will be taken with the spreading of My teaching,

which is the only perfectly true one.

[8] Look, this is how polytheism, the whole heathendom, the completely wrong belief in your soul migration and in many thousands of other terrible stupidities came into existence.

[9] Even when many real teachers were always sent by God among the blinded people, they accomplished little, because the free will – without which man would become an animal – must be left untouched for the human soul of this Earth. Thus patience is needed to bring mankind, and surely most of them in another world, to a better light.

[10] But woe, once all false teachers, priests and prophets who still very well know the old, pure truth themselves, but who are always persistently withholding that teaching from the people because of their greediness and lust for power – they later will not escape My wrathful administration of justice.

[11] They also have a free will for a certain time on this Earth and they also can do what they want, but once they will go too far, then I Myself will pour out, as a very bright lightning, My light of the eternal truth of all things over the people on Earth, as I have shown and taught you now Myself. Then all false teachers, priests and prophets will lament and will try to hide themselves from My enlightened men and from the power of My light. But their trouble and great efforts will be completely in vain, for the enlightened nations will chase after them with fiery whips from one end of the Earth to the other as *if they were* wild, devouring animals, and they will not find any save inn where they can be accommodated, and their kingdom and dark dominion will completely come to an end forever.

[12] With this, friend, you have besides the third reason, which I showed you as clear as possible for your understanding, now also many other things, which not only you but also all the others should well take at heart.”

## 6. THE SUGGESTION OF THE CAPTAIN TO UNMASK THE FALSE PROPHETS



HE captain thanked Me wholeheartedly for My patience and the trouble I had taken, and said: “O Lord and Master, although everything of what You have explained to me now is not yet as clear for me as it probably is for all Your disciples, I still penetrated that much into the spirit of truth that I look at this Earth now with very different eyes than ever before in my whole life.

[2] But one thing came into my mind when You explained how the new false teachers, priests and prophets will for earthly advantages easily and quickly turn the people away from the old, pure truth by all kinds of deceit, of which the ignorant people can of course not know its nature. If such villains out of pure self-interest will begin to work with the people in this way, then an exceptional sign from the Heavens will certainly be a very effective way to shut the mouth of those false teachers forever. For instance, if that falsely speaking camel – the spiritual man who continues to live in the beyond – would appear to all of them, very recognizably and with a serious looking face and would testify against the false teachers in a way that everyone can understand, it would be extremely difficult for those false prophets to further do anything against a people that is enlightened again from the world in the beyond. What is Your opinion on this?”

[3] I said: “On the one hand, many things can be said about it, but on the other hand very little of any importance. For look, firstly the method that you now suggest to Me has been used at all times by all nations with a more or less positive effect.

[4] As long as some nation was for the greatest part still loyal to the old truth, and *only* here and there part of that nation became too worldly, leaving the truth more and more, your methods had often very beneficial results for 2, often 3 generations. In the 4<sup>th</sup> generation however, who was still more concerned with the



pursuit of worldly treasures, and who, out of their own free will, switched over to the love of the world, the methods that were used became fables, and only few partly believed in it.

[5] When those methods were used again, they already had generally little effect and they were just ridiculed and mocked by the prominent ones. And the false men of wonders, who also knew the skill to work for the wallets of the lazy great and prominent ones, had already the advantage. And so it went further downwards for many ages with the different nations because of their own fault.

[6] Look, the method that you suggested to Me to exterminate all that is false among the people, is now in the very best way in Myself from the highest Heavens and already for a long time actively present with the Jews who still are most familiar with the old truth in the purest way. And several times in Jerusalem and in many other cities and places it has performed signs that were only possible to God, and it has taught the most enlightening truth from the Heavens. Just go and investigate how many people have repented from their old errors and sins by this very best method.

[7] But if the very best method can accomplish so little by which by necessity the free will of men must be preserved, then how little will another spirit from the big world in the beyond be able to accomplish?

[8] Besides, it is a hard task for every greatly blessed spirit in the big world in the beyond to have to appear visibly again in this world. If he does this out of his free will, then it is also allowed by Me, but no spirit will be forced to do that.

[9] Especially for a less perfected spirit it is not less difficult to return from the beyond to this world – especially among sheer worldly men – than if you would like to return in the body of your mother, which was the first and most oppressed world of every human being, and would like to order or accomplish something there. With this, you can more or less compare the life's situation of the spirits in the big world in the beyond with

the living human pilgrims on this oppressed Earth.

[10] A small circle has enough room in a big one, but when it is the other way around it is difficult. Understand this well.”

[11] They all thought a long time about this, and I took some rest.

[12] We still stayed for 2 hours after noon on that hill. A lot of things were still discussed and also actively shown by Raphael to the Romans, and were later written down by the captain and also by his subordinates. Then we went home again and partook of a meal.

[13] I spent the afternoon resting. However, the disciples still had a lot of questions of the captain to answer. But John and Matthew wrote things down and made short notations of what they had seen and heard. Also My James the elder made notes for himself, which he only put in order after a few years. The captain took also the opportunity to make notations in Greek for himself, which also he put them more in order later on.

[14] I still stayed with the disciples for about 8 full days in Gennesaret, and more strangers came there from near Damascus and also from other cities who came to know Me and accepted to believe in Me.

[15] All the other things that were taught and done there do not have to be mentioned anymore word for word, since up to now it had been extensively shown about what and how the people were taught by Me and by Raphael who also stayed visibly and actively with Me in Gennesaret during that time. For they were not only very clearly and completely truthfully taught in the things of the Kingdom of God on Earth but also in all kinds of the natural things and their phenomena. So they left their old superstition because they realized and understood their old errors.

[16] In this way, soon a very great community was formed in My name in Damascus, as well as in other places, and My name was praised in the whole wide environment.

**7. THE NEW TESTAMENT.  
THE WHORE OF BABEL**

**THE SPIRITUAL CIRCUMSTANCES IN THE AGES AFTER  
CHRIST UP TO THE 2<sup>ND</sup> HALF OF THE 19<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY.  
THE SPIRITUAL CHANGE BY  
THE SHINING-IN OF THE DIVINE LIGHT.**

*(A nota bene, dictated on August 11, 1862. Continues up to chapter 12)*



**NOTA BENE:** a clarification now for this time.

[2] Already after 500 years after My earthly life, most of the messages of all the things I have done and taught during My physical life on this Earth in the whole Jewish kingdom were partly no more available and mostly again mixed with the old nonsense, especially for what concerns the explanations of things and phenomena in the natural world – so much so that no one could discover the pure truth in it anymore.

[3] Although many quite the same handwritings, mostly made by Greeks and Romans, were preserved, partly in the 10 cities in the long and wide Valley of Jordan (the approximately 60 cities also belonged to it, which in My time, but also already before that and after Me until the time of the destruction of Jerusalem and its surroundings, were all mostly inhabited by Greeks and Romans), partly in Essaea (of which however already 1200 years ago no trace could be found because that group was too much persecuted by pagan Roman Christians), but mostly in the great library in Alexandria.

[4] But just look at all those devastating wars and great migrations of people in half of Asia, the north of Africa and almost the whole of Europe. And this because already very soon after Me the people, especially the leaders of the communities, distorted My teaching and mixed it with the old nonsense because the purest truth from the Heavens produced too little profit for them – as the prophet Daniel, and shortly after Me My disciple John on the island Patmos in his Revelation that I gave

him, have shown.

[5] Then with Me it was like this: Good, since you prefer the old, worldly filth instead of My purest gold from the Heavens, and since by that you look more and more like dogs who return to what they have vomited, and also like pigs who speedily run back to the pool where they so often greatly dirtied themselves, the gold from the Heavens will be taken away from you for a long time. In your distress, darkness and need you will languish for Me, and death will become again a great terror for you on Earth.

[6] And so it happened up to this time. Almost all the cities and places, where handwritings about My many works and teachings were largely available, were destroyed and devastated. Only the small gospels of John and Matthew, to serve as ethics for the people of good will, are still somehow linguistically correct and preserved as real documents about My works and teachings. Also the writings of Luke, and Marc – as far as he briefly wrote down for himself what he heard from Paul – *were preserved*, as well as several of the apostles' letters, of which however also many were lost, and the Revelation of John, although also with a few linguistic errors, which does however not diminish anything of what is most important for those who are lead by Me.

[7] Concerning the other teachings about the things and phenomena and their characteristics, only few were preserved until this time – here and there and much hidden. And wherever something was found from the time of the Romans and the Greeks, it ended up in the monasteries, but it was never told to mankind that was languishing in the dark – not even the size of one stroke.

[8] Solar and moon eclipses, comets and other very natural phenomena were not profitable for the priests when it was explained according to the truth. They very soon were changed into forerunners and declarations of punishments that I imposed upon the people so that by that the people who were made frightened would massively make pilgrimages to the temples,

which soon came up as mushrooms from the ground, to lay down many rich offerings at the feet of the priests.

[9] There are still many important handwritings from My time that can be found in the catacombs of Rome and in the papal castles of Spain and Italy and in some places of the German kingdom. But also now, because of the great greediness and the lust for power and splendor of the whore of Babel, she will not show anything of it to the people, and this out of fear and great worrying that this would greatly betray her now and that she would have to give a strict account to everyone of the reason why for so many ages she withheld the truth from the people. Since that humiliating reason is surely very clear to every thinking person, it truly is also not necessary to explain it further.

[10] How short is the time since the 4 gospels and the ‘Acts of the apostles’ of Luke, the letters of the apostles and the Revelation of John were strictly withheld from the people? And in several countries they are still withheld to them.

[11] How strongly did they resist against the light of My bright flash of lightning of the sciences that again would clearly illuminate from the east to the west everything that is on the Earth, and this already 300 years ago. And its light is shining ever more brightly, so much so that in this time even the most secret and hidden rooms of the formerly so great and mighty whore of Babel are open as if on bright daylight.

[12] One could justly ask and say: Yes, how long will that whore of Babel be able to go on?


[13] Then I say: That is a small-minded question. Look at the light of My flash of lightning that becomes brighter and mightier every day. How can the old dark, pagan Babylonian wonder-nonsense, which deceit has been put into the light in the smallest corners and holes, still go on along with the thousands, now completely mathematically proven truths of all skills of sciences and technique which can be freely used and are accessible to everyone?

[14] She can still stand as long as there are still a few old superstitious women alive – kept very dumb from former times – and a few hypocritical fanatics who want to believe the fables of the priests, and as long as those rulers still possess any means to protect the throne of the whore. But this can and will only last for a very short time because it has been taken care that the means of such rulers will be taken away – as they were already taken away from many – and who are now without country and people and must watch how their old activities, efforts and dark works go up in smoke and vapor.

[15] Just say: can the night rule on Earth when the sun is already high above the horizon? And this is now already the situation on Earth. The light became too powerful. And the rulers who formerly adopted all darkness so much – for the sake of their thrones and their indescribable good life – begin to understand their great powerlessness in the invincible power of this light. If they want to survive, they must now adopt a friendly attitude towards the light which they formerly hated so much. And if they unnoticed want to adopt the old darkness again, the people will realize it. They will then refuse to obey them and will bring them into great embarrassments and drive them away from their thrones of rulership, as there are already many examples of it now.

[16] My will cannot be resisted. Although I leave the people continuously their free will where it concerns the details, but in general I am the Lord, and I do not consider the mighty of this Earth. The time of the light is now here and can no more be stopped by any earthly human power.

## 8. THEY THREW AWAY THE CORNERSTONE. ITS TIME HAS COME. THE END OF THE FALSE PROPHETS.

OW has also come the time of the Cornerstone that the construction workers, especially those from Babel, have thrown away. The one who will now stumble upon this stone will be smashed, and the one on who the Cornerstone will fall will be crushed, as this will now happen soon and very soon to all those who will put the Cornerstone aside and want to follow the whore of Babel. O, how will they soon lament and wail. But the rejected Cornerstone will not help them.

[2] I have seen with great patience the game of the pigs for a long time. Like the pig-keepers who kept their pigs in Gadara during My earthly life. But there were 2 very seriously possessed men in the old basalt<sup>1</sup> quarry – for Gadara was an old mine city.

[3] With whom can those 2 possessed men be compared who were retained with chains and ropes in the big old quarry? When I came, they broke their chains and ropes into pieces, ran at Me and said: ‘What have we to do with You before the time?’ Look, those 2 can be compared with the mean, old spirit of worldly *pursuit of gain* in which a legion of other evil spirits are staying.

[4] But since those spirits recognized My serious will, they asked Me to allow them to move into the pigs. And the 2 were free and glorified Me, although the Gadarenes asked Me later to leave them because they were too afraid for Me. And so, in the future, the real spirit of the world and his activity will also glorify Me because he was freed from the legion of his evil, selfish spirits by the power of My light. Although they moved into their pigs, but by that they came to ruin in the sea.

[5] All the ultramontane<sup>2</sup> servants of the whore of Babel belong

---

<sup>1</sup> Basalt: fine-grained volcanic rock (dark gray, dark green, brown, reddish or black in color). Rock that solidified from a molten state.

<sup>2</sup> Ultramontane: beyond the mountains (Alps).

to the pigs, because of their dirty, selfish and imperious strivings which they showed very openly and loudly by their concordats<sup>1</sup> and missions, breves<sup>2</sup> and curses. And already since the time that the whore of Babel ruled over the nations and their kings, the legions of evil spirits moved into the aforementioned pigs that jumped into the sea. And at this time most of all. That is why their downfall is sure.

[6] The sea means their stubbornness to persist in the old darkness and the light that they persecute and curse everywhere – *this light* in all the branches of science and technology that I now let flow from the Heavens to everyone.

[7] Look, that is the sea into which the pigs are driven by the bad spirits who moved in them for already a long time and in which they will find their sure downfall.

[8] They dug a pit for My original light from the Heavens to hide it from the eyes of the people and to keep them into darkness to their worldly advantage. But I freed the light, and now they fall into the pit they dug, in which My heavenly original light was meant to suffocate and go to ruin.

[9] Since this is now happening before everyone's eyes and at everyone's obvious desire it is senseless to ask when this will happen.

[10] It is easy to realize that this cannot happen in one moment, as less as the night can suddenly make way for the full day. And in this world everything needs its own time. And no man, no matter how great his talents and abilities may be, can be a scientist or an artist in 1 day. And no fruit of a tree can suddenly be ripe and enjoyed. But once the trees are full of sap in the near spring, and the buds are strongly swelling, then this is certainly a sign that the warm spring and the blissful summer are very close. Some periods of light frost in between can then not make a great difference anymore.

---

<sup>1</sup> Concordat: agreement between church and state.

<sup>2</sup> Breve: writing of the pope that proclaims denominations and favors.



[11] What the prophet Ezekiel has prophesied in the 14<sup>th</sup> chapter about the punishment of Israel and Jerusalem is now referring to all the works of the false prophets: it will and must be destroyed.

[12] Of what the works of the false prophets consist and who the Pharisees of the present day are, does not have to be explained any further to every clear thinking person, because everyone knows the old enemies of the light, of the truth and the love from Me.

[13] When I Myself told the apostles not to judge, damn or curse anyone, so that the same that comes from Me would not happen to them, then who gave them the right to judge, condemn and impose the most terrible and awful curses on those who, stirred up by My Spirit, have searched and still search for the pure truth? Therefore, they themselves will be thrown into that pit that they dug for the many millions of innocent people. And therein will their evil works also be judged, relentlessly and without any mercy, and they will receive their reward.

[14] Look at all the continents, then you will see how the works of the false prophets of the whore of Babel are hated on Earth by almost all those people who are somewhat more mature, and how their missionaries are received and respected. Certainly not as you can read in the deceitful papers that serve the whore of Babel, but quite differently. Only with very immature and wild people they still can stand for a short time. But once they very soon show their greedy and imperious tendencies, or when they show from under their sheep's clothing the wolf that can be easily recognized, the success of their mission is over and they have to take care to escape from there and save their skin.

[15] How often did they not send their most daring missionaries to China and Japan where there is much gold, silver and other treasures. As long as they did not lay off their sheep's clothing they were tolerated, and they attracted many to them, for the sake of the pretended teaching of heavenly peace. But as soon as they – as it is custom to say – were getting warm, and their sheep's clothing became uncomfortable to them, thinking that

they now could act freely in their true, inner appearance, they were immediately recognized for all the things they actually wanted, and they were grabbed and were given their well deserved reward.

[16] When they received the news in Babel about their deserved terrible fate, they were declared holy with great glamour and glitter, even though I Myself have said and taught that only God is holy. But to such holy ones I can only say: 'I do not know you and have never known you. So go away from Me and seek your salvation and reward with those in whose name you have preached and acted. For you never preached and still less acted in My name, for since your childhood you never accomplished a deed of true neighborly love as I have taught, because you never believed in Me but only misused My name to your worldly advantage. And therefore you cannot expect any reward or mercy from Me. Thus go to those that you have served, and ask your reward from them.'

## 9. THE IMPOSSIBILITY OF MORE RELIGIOUS WARS



AND this is now also the case in this world. In the so-called holy city it already swarms with several hungry holy ones, and they do not know anymore what to do with them and what small paradise they still could give them on this Earth, because despite their cursing threats they cannot command much more than a few square miles, since the kings of the awakened nations and still less the people themselves do not want to be commanded by them.

[2] Then what else can those lazy and hungry holy ones do, except to leave their holiness and to search and accept other services that were not holy enough for them before, in order not to starve as holy ones.

[3] Do you think that in the present situation great religious wars will follow? That would be the case if the man in Babel would still possess his former power over kings and nations and if the

greatest part of the people would still be as dumb and dark as 300 years ago. But presently the followers of the old, once so mighty Babel became very small, and the people are already too enlightened by My flash of lightning. Even the most simple country man with his whole family does not believe anymore that the devil activates the steam machines on the sea and on the land for the sake of a soul that is sold to them, or that the devil jumps and dances to and fro through the wires of the telegraphs, bringing the desired messages from the faraway countries and places to the prominent and also to the simple ones.

[4] How many are there who still seriously believe in the so-called wonder statues? Where can you still find a country where the so-called magicians are burned as sorcerers, dragging the readers of the Bible and other spiritual books and writings before a relentless inquisition court that will torture them to death? Which person that is somehow educated still attaches any importance to some remittance of sins, to all those empty and unspiritual so-called religious ceremonies, sanctified water, incense, sanctified images, clocks and bells, wax candles, relics, requiem masses and expensive funerals, fasting *days* and *norma-days*<sup>1</sup> and still a lot more of such things?

[5] They still go along with those things for the sake of the outer law that already became very weak, but out of 1,000 hardly 10 still believe in it, and not as serious as this was unfortunately the case for a long time during the former dark times of superstition.

[6] If this is the case now for everyone, and not otherwise, then how could one consider a big or even general religious war?

[7] Those who are really dark would like to stand up against the many enlightened ones, but there are too few of them. And if the enlightened ones would be attacked, they know that they certainly will always and ever be victorious over the few and completely powerless dark ones.

[8] But despite that, there will be all kinds of battles and

---

<sup>1</sup> Norma : Latin word (= rule, directive). Important ecclesiastic feast days on which public amusements were forbidden.

small wars for the humiliation of many dictators who want to stop My light. For from now on I will have no more patience or consideration with all those dictators. This you can believe since I announce this to you Myself.

[9] Look at the kingdom in which you live. It still has a strong Babylonian attitude – especially for what concerns the dictators – and this for certain reasons which you can easily imagine. They must now gather all their power, and help their ‘holy father’ on the old throne – if they can and will *do that*.

[10] Yes, if they will still doubt any longer to give their nations what is lawful from Me – since the pure truth will make and must make everyone free now, according to My Word which should only be followed – they will also share the fate of the one from whom they expected their salvation up to now. They do not have the financial means which are very necessary for a more powerful help. And if they still will rely on an imagined help from the side of a 7 times sanctified altar and its image that performs wonders, they will soon lack every other power. Just let them watch the consequences of their dark concordat, and all the foreign countries will say: ‘If you loyally bound yourself so much to our generally hated enemy of the light and neighborly love, then we can make no more friendship alliances with you. Let those help you now in your need and loneliness, for whose sake you forgot all your old friends and who you favored – so much so that you gave more than half of your power into their hands, this to your very great disadvantage.’

[11] Think about it yourself, and see if in your country the extremely bitter consequences of that thoughtless act are not in this way loudly spoken out from everywhere. Then such mistake should very soon be corrected, otherwise that malicious general fire that brings death will come also<sup>1</sup>.

[12] When all the means are lacking to preserve a house, and

---

<sup>1</sup> This possibly refers to the concordat of 1855 which gave the church far-reaching authority in school, education, marriage and so on. The consequence was a war between Austria, France and Italy in 1859 and a war between Austria, Italy and Prussia in 1866.

when their friends and even the better relatives turn their back to them and do not want to hear or know anything to preserve such house that has been neglected for already a long time, then how will that house be able to stand as a strong house, even in the old manner?

[13] Yes, it can strengthen itself and become strong again, but to do this there is firstly needed an unbendable, firm will to do away with everything that is old and moldered, laying a new, firm foundation, and repair the whole house as well as a firm roof by many good workers,. Then everyone will see it and they will say: 'Look, now this house, which formerly became totally useless, has regained true value, and we can trust its foundations, rooms and roofs.'

[14] If they would take the matter into their hands in this way, they would not lack all kinds of good friends from the outside and still more from the inside. But who will ever trust a house of which no one knows anymore who actually dictates the law to the lord of the house so that he can still look like a lord of the house for a while.

## 10. THE FUTURE OF THE CEREMONIAL CHURCH



WHAT is the use of sowing a new piece of cloth to an old, worn out coat so that the repaired spot would cover the naked skin, protecting it against the wind for some time. But then, when only a little storm comes up, it will easily tear away the new piece of cloth from the old, worn out coat, and at the same time also a part of the coat. Then who will cover his naked skin against the cold? So make a completely new and strong coat for yourself right away as long as you still have the means for that, and do not waste in acquiring new pieces of cloth to repair the old and utterly worn out coat, which is not profitable. Then, when storms will come up, they will no more be able to do any harm to your skin.

[2] Which real innkeeper wants to put new wine into old sacks?

What will happen to those sacks when the new wine will ferment in it? The wine will tear the sacks, and the unwise innkeeper will lose the sacks as well as the wine. An unwise ruler who shoves a new constitution into an old one can expect the same. By necessity, the new one will cause the ruin of the other, and the ruler will lose everything by that: his constitution, his country and his people, as there are already several examples of this now in Europe, and soon others will follow.

[3] I say to you: whoever will still make eyes at that certain man who calls himself pious, and will talk to him with a snake's tongue while My light from the Heavens becomes more and more intense, will soon be completely deserted and will stand alone. For I want that the long lasting courting<sup>1</sup> of Babel will finally come to an end. From now on, everything will be new and different, and My Word that I have spoken to the apostles and to a lot of other people, must now arise with new strength and might, and then last until the end of times of this Earth. Everyone must come in the sun and warm themselves in the light of My teaching from the Heavens. And those who sincerely acknowledge and love Me must have, from the cradle to the grave, a continuous very visible relationship again with My angels and so also with Me, just like it was during the first times.

[4] Now you also ask what will happen in your country, when the old sacks will burst because of the new wine that will forcefully be put in and the wine be spilled. I say to you: surely a thousand times better than now when almost no one trusts not even his most honest brother out of fear for all the misery and need that can come from that long and costly hesitation, while he always says: 'You never know what will happen.'

[5] The moment that the wine sacks will burst, the great consumers will no more exist, and the state will take care that those who loyally served the state and the people for a long time

---

<sup>1</sup> Courting: to seek the affection of.

with their spirit and mind will not lack anything. But the more than a quarter of a million streetwalkers and loafers without merit – mostly from the side of the clergy – will no more receive their great income and pensions<sup>1</sup>, but on the contrary they will be strictly forced to pay the debt of the state, because that will be respected under all circumstances, so that the one brother would not make a complaint to the other.

[6] Under all circumstances I am again in charge now. And so no more chaos can exist to the disadvantage of those who adhere to Me. This year I still will have a little more patience with the country under which laws you live, but not much longer – even if many of My old friends would still live in their body and in great love and faith. Those who follow Me, and the new enlightened ones, will surely be saved, but all the others will be chastised.

[7] Now you say of course within yourself again: ‘Yes, Lord, all this is all right, for once the rulership of some people is spoiled and mischievous, the people must receive another one that fulfills the physical and especially the spiritual needs of the people. But as long as the old temples of idols, which are called houses of God or churches, still exist with their servants, and perform their service, and may still preach the great working of their clerical submission to God to the still many blind people, especially in the pilgrimage places and monasteries, a new rulership of the people – whether it exists from a new constitution or from a new ruler – will always be in danger of gradually relapsing again into the old darkness. And this all the sooner when the servants of the temples have to live from the income of their clerical work. If they then still have to exist for a certain time as teachers of the people, then let them be paid just like any other civil servant. But they never should want or accept any payment from no one for their service to the church. Then the works of the temple servants in exploiting the people,

---

<sup>1</sup> In the years 1868-1874 the concordat laws were changed into state laws. As a result of this, many clergy authorities became jobless.

cheating and stealing will certainly be very clearly stopped. And the pilgrimages, wonder statues and relics and still a lot more of churchly miscarriages and abuses will soon be put to an end.’

[8] On this, I say that on the one hand your opinion is completely correct and right, and for a while it would also do fine because the so-called spiritual man would undeniably be more engaged in teaching the people for which he is paid than in clergy ceremonies which are no more profitable to him. But if he would perform his cleric service without payment, the blind people would consider him to be even more important because of his merit for God, and in this manner they would automatically fall into their old superstition, still worse and deeper than before. What would give him a great and magnificent prestige to the people, the spiritual man would not represent it as something that has no merit for Me but as something that is extremely pleasing to Me. And in this way he would strengthen the people into their old superstition and make a new throne for the great rulership of the whore of Babel that nears its complete end now.

[9] So let the clergy exploit the people. Let the still blind people make pilgrimages and pay expensive masses. Let them do their confessions, go to church, organize exaggerated expensive processions for their deceased ones, let those clergies chase inheritances and sell expensive exemptions and remissions of sin. Let those Babylonians do even worse things, then also the most blind one will soon come to his senses and say: ‘No, such religion can only be deceit, because those who are most convinced of the pure teaching of Christ and who should act accordingly, show by their deeds that they themselves attach no importance to that whole teaching, they do not believe in a God, and thus they are simply false prophets. They only care about their belly. They often take away the whole possession of the people by all kinds of deceit. And if this is not sufficient, *they take it away* by some kind of lawful coercion which is allowed to them by the state. And they do not even give one thirsty soul



a sip of water of all the things they simply robbed away. Therefore, away with all those false prophets. Away with those devouring wolves in sheep's clothing, and away with everything with which they tormented, deceived and robbed the poor, blind people. Away with the temples, altars, secret images, relics, clocks and all useless cleric utensils that do not have any spiritual value for life. From now on we will examine the whole teaching of Christ ourselves, and let it be explained to us by true teachers who are enlightened by God, and then we will live and act accordingly. And the true teacher will not be hungry or thirsty at our table, and he will also not have to walk around on bare feet.'

## 11. THE FUTURE OF THE STATES OF EUROPE AND AMERICA



LOOK, this is how things are now in Italy that was still dark until recently. This is how it was in the German kingdom many years ago, as well as formerly in England and in Northern America that – through hard battles – purifies itself even more at this time from all the tendencies that resist My initial teaching. There they often say: 'But Lord, how can You allow the Confederates, who want to keep the slaves, to win important victories against the very humane Unionist?'<sup>1</sup>

[2] But I say: with the Confederates not everything is sin what seems to be sin, and with the Unionist not everything is virtue. And so, both parties are now pulling out the splinters and beams from each others' eyes, and the one sweeps before the door of the other, which should not be the way according to My teaching.

[3] However, when the one as well as the other party will first

---

<sup>1</sup> Confederates: southern states of Northern America that separated themselves in 1861 from the American Union (Secession) and united as a confederation. The Unionists represented the Union of the northern American states. These 2 parties waged the so-called Secession War from 1861 until 1865 by which the abolition of slavery was only one of the motives.

free their eyes of the splinters and beams, and will sweep away the dung of their house floor, the 2 parties will soon and easily understand each other and will come to an agreement.

[4] Such big and also small arguments – between nations as well as between individual people – happen always when they do not observe My teaching which says that no one should say to his neighbor: ‘Come here, then I will take away the splinter from your eye.’ Then the neighbor says: ‘What do you care about the splinter in my eye while I can discover a whole beam in your eye? First clean your eye, then only you can help me to clean my eye.’

[5] There were already a lot of such battles and there still will be several more of them if the people will not actively and completely adhere to My pure teaching.

[6] But this story in America will not last long anymore. In Southern America, where the Babylon is still much more present than anywhere else on Earth, a big judgment will soon break loose, because the Babylon must be transformed everywhere into a new Jerusalem, and the pigs of the pagan Gadarenes must go to ruin in the grave of their night.

[7] I think that I have shown you more than enough now as a ‘nota bene’ for this time. And everyone who can somehow count will easily come to realize what the situation is and why this is happening, and that by necessity they soon must produce their result.


[8] So you should not ask Me for the year, the day or the hour, since all these things are already clear for everyone, and everyone must certainly see the very near end of the night when he sees the little clouds on the horizon that are brightly illuminated by the sun.

[9] Just let those people who possess some power in one way or another try to forbid the grass and all the herbs, bushes and trees to grow again in the springtime, to make new buds, to become green and to bloom, and to prevent all this, *or* to command the wind and to prescribe the free flash of lightning its way, then

they soon will be convinced how great their powerlessness is as a result of their folly.

[10] Once I have spoken out something and want it to happen, it will happen as certain as the sun must come up every morning and go down in the evening. I actually do not have to tell you anything further, although I still can see a question in your mind in relation to France, as to what this kingdom, which is now in earthly respect very powerful, will do regarding the present, general flowing of light. I say to you: to go against My will, will certainly be hard and impossible.

## 12. THE ORDER OF DEVELOPMENT

HAT it (France) shows itself now pro forma<sup>1</sup> as the protector of Babylon, while it is actually its enemy, is very true, for by that it will hold back other states with their rulers, who are still very much in favor of Babylon, to put with their combined force the old night back again on its high throne to enslave their people even more than ever before. For only very little of a free, good will is left with the old rulers towards their people. What they are doing now for the benefit of the people is enforced by the circumstances. If they could do away with those *circumstances* through some beneficial method, they immediately would start to sing another and actually very sad song to their people, and the people would again have to dance to the pipes of the old Spanish inquisition, which would certainly not be desired by anyone anymore.

[2] To destroy in one blow all the present circumstances, which are still floating between good and evil, would mean the destruction of countries and peoples. Therefore, everything must have and go through a certain time in this world. As long as the new must-wine is not very well fermented and thus did not remove all impurity from itself by its own activity, it will not

---

<sup>1</sup> Pro forma: done as a formality.

become a pure and spiritual wine.

[3] If someone wants to build a new, good house, he only should completely destroy the old house after he has constructed the new one. For if he would immediately destroy the old one, then where will he live and who will protect him against all kinds of discomfort during the time that the new house is build? Then it is wiser to carry an old, no matter how worn out and repaired coat out of need until a new one is ready than to walk around naked. And so, according to My very good order, the one thing must always come from the other after it can last and be durable.

[4] During the time that I gave My teaching on Earth to the people, paganism was largely spread into all direction in all kinds of forms and appearances, and My teaching was only a bright morning star in the great pagan night. The morning star became soon easily covered by the very thick clouds of the pagans, so much so that the people could hardly and difficultly guess its true position. Some said: 'Look, here' and others: 'Look, there'. And it happened that they took other stars for the morning star and honored them greatly. And so, for the formerly supremely powerful paganism it was very easy to melt together and unify the morning star with themselves, and in this manner to present themselves as the only, true, old morning star to the people who asked for the morning star about which they repeatedly heard.

[5] The morning star that is in this way deformed and covered by clouds performs also wonders before the blind people while only the name of Zeus was changed into Mine. And the people were satisfied, and the old paganism remained, with very little changes. But still, My teaching remained intact and well preserved with a few *people*, despite all persecutions. The noble seed that fell into good soil took root, well and strong, flourished and bore good fruits, although in secret, unnoticed for the blind eyes of the whore of Babel.

[6] The morning star became a sun that completely comes up now, and the clouds of paganism will never more be able to

cover that sun so that not even someone with weak eyes could take the day for the night.

[7] The light of My flash of lightning has become mighty and will never more be pushed away by the pagan night. How? That I have clearly shown in this ‘nota bene’.

[8] I want to end this writing<sup>1</sup> to admonish with all My love each of My friends, not only to read this, but to take it well at heart and to believe that I am the One who have revealed this out of My free mercy to My friends to comfort their heart and enlighten the reason of their soul. And in return I do not wish anything else than only your sincere love and thus also a living faith.

[9] He who can and wants to do something special, out of love for Me, for My always earthly poor and now already old helper<sup>2</sup>, I soon will reward him manifold, amen. This say I, the Lord, the eternal Life and the Truth.

[10] And now in the next writing we return again to the gospel. We still will stay half day in Gennesaret, then we shortly will travel through the 10 cities.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Meaning Writing nr. 297 (Grosses Evangelium Johannes) of the original handwritings of Jakob Lorber.

<sup>2</sup> Jakob Lorber.

## THE LORD NEAR CAESAREA PHILIPPI

*(continued)*

### 13. THE DOUBTS OF THE LORD'S FOLLOWERS



As it was said in the former writing, I still stayed half day in Gennesaret, from the early morning until more than 1 hour after noon.

[2] At that time I especially blessed My friends who were still present here, the old Marcus, Kisjona, Philopold and also Mary. She first went to Kis with Kisjona and Philopold, stayed there for some time and went also again to Nazareth. There she told My brothers everything that she had heard and personally seen and experienced of My teaching and works about which My brothers were very surprised, as were also some other old acquaintances and friends of Josef, of Mary and of the 3 brothers who were carpenters at home and who took care of the house.

[3] But despite the fact they believed in Me, **several of them shrugged their shoulders and said:** 'He really performs great things, and His teaching is completely true, pure and good, but if He will resist the temple servants too much and witness against them, and act with all His divine might and power against them, He will go to ruin, for their attitude towards Him and His followers, who are certainly already widespread, is, as we have heard, relentless and malicious everywhere.

[4] Although He has many good friends and followers among the gentiles who completely believe in Him, but among the Jews there are still very few, and even those take Him mostly for a great prophet and do not want to hear or know much about a Son of God, even when to Him and with Him everything has been fulfilled that the prophets prophesied about Him.

[5] Now it easily could turn out that He will have to share the bad lot of John the Baptist, and then the few Jews who still believe in Him up to now will immediately turn around and will turn again to the Pharisees out of great fear for the temple, and

help them to persecute those who are His followers up till now.

[6] Although, up to now He still was able to stand *firm* everywhere and could powerfully resist all those who persecuted Him, and we also hope and firmly believe that He, by means of His divine nature and being, and according to the power of the divine wisdom that fills Him, He very well and without further disturbance will complete the work that was started. But the world is false and evil, and its children are dark and very malicious. And up to now they always knew, and certainly still know, the art of turning around all that which God has revealed by the prophets for the sake of the people – no matter how true, good and wise it was – and to change it into their own evilness. And this they do in such a way that even the from nature better and more enlightened people in the many false and evil things, were no more able to see what was ancient, purely divine, true and good, and thus they had to stay in the false and evil of the world.

[7] Well now, our divine Brother Jesus has already begun to let a mighty light shine through the terrible darkness and maliciousness of the Pharisees and their loyal followers, in such a way that also the gentiles with many hundreds are sunning and warming themselves in His light. But in this world the possibility is still imaginable and present for our Brother that His justified zeal will come to a sad end.”

[8] **Many agreed on these words, but not Mary and a few of her male and female friends.**

[9] **And one of them said:** “Listen, if He Himself wants it and will allow it, it surely can happen that the evil ones will be able to assault His body. However, certainly not to their supposed advantage, but to their downfall, which is very clearly shown by the old and more recent prophets about the Messiah. So let us not unnecessary and needlessly worry about Him, for He knows best and most clearly what He has to do for the true well being of all men. We want, will always, and under all circumstances believe in Him and deeply honor Him as the Son of God.”

[10] Everyone was satisfied with this, and after that, they still talked a lot about My teachings and deeds by which then many in Nazareth believed in Me, more truthfully and firmer than before. For even My 3 brothers who stayed at home did not take Me for that which I was, while they could have known it. And because of that unbelief I did not visit Nazareth so often. And when the citizens of Nazareth asked Me – their well known son of Josef the carpenter – from where I could have received that wisdom and power, I told them: a prophet is nowhere least respected than in his homeland. Then I left from there with My disciples and did also not personally come back to Nazareth.

[11] But after that discussion with Mary about Me, their faith in Me was strengthened, and many glorified and praised Me in My personality as the prophesied Messiah who came into the world and as the son of David.

#### 14. THE PRAYER OF THE LORD



S already mentioned, I did not stay long anymore in Gennesaret after I blessed My friends, whom I named before, and had taken leave from them, but I stood up with My disciples and went further down the road, accompanied by Ebal, Jarah and the 3 known Romans to the 10 or actually 60 cities that were partly spread in the valley of Jordan itself and partly on the mountains and hills close by and further up.

[2] When I had reached a first, rather high and separate hill outside of Gennesaret with all those who were with Me, I turned to those who accompanied Me and said: “You have accompanied Me until now out of great love, because you well know and believe who was in Me with you and whom you have accompanied. Stay from now on in My love in this way, then from now on I also will stay in that love in you, with you and in your midst. And whatever, in this world, you will ask the Father in Me, will be given to you. But do not ask for the idol things of this world but for the eternal treasures of the Kingdom of God,



because all the rest that you need to live in this world will be given to you anyway.”

[3] **On this, the captain said:** “Lord and Master, how should we pray in a for You well pleasing manner and thus that we also should not ask in vain for something which is justified? For man can come into many different kinds of needy situations in this world and can then only turn to You with a real request for help. But then how should he ask and pray?”

[4] **I said:** “Pray in every need and adversity with natural words in your heart to Me, then you will not pray in vain.

[5] **But when you ask Me something, then do not use many words, and absolutely no ceremonies, but pray very quietly in the secret love chamber of your heart:**

[6] ‘Our loving Father who lives in Heaven, Your name be sanctified always and forever. May Your Kingdom of Life, Light and Truth come to us and stay with us. May Your only holy and righteous will be done on this Earth among us people, in the same manner as in Your Heavens among Your perfected angels. But on this Earth, give us our daily bread. Forgive us our sins and weaknesses, as we will always forgive those who sinned against us. Let no temptations come over us that we cannot resist, and free us in this way from all evil in which man can fall as a result of too strong enticements of this world and its evil spirit. For to You, o Father in Heaven, belongs all might, all power, all strength and all glory which fills all Heavens from eternity to eternity.’

[7] **Look My friend, in this way everyone should pray in his heart, then his prayer will be heard if it was meant in all seriousness. But not only with the mouth, but truthfully and lively in his heart, for God is in Himself a purest Spirit, and so He should be worshipped in the spirit and in the full earnest truth.**

[8] **If you do see and understand this, then act accordingly. Then you will live, as well as everyone who will do the same.”**


[9] **After this short speech of Mine they all thanked Me. I**

blessed them once again and let the still visible Raphael go. He shot upwards as a mighty flash of lightning into the infinite space. The Romans were startled and looked up for a long time, so that perhaps they still might see his form, which was however no more possible now.

[10] Then I also took leave from those who accompanied Me to this hill, and continued with My disciples upon the hill over the fruitful plain that started there, and went further along the plain. Within a few hours we reached a small, old city in which the citizens were mostly Greeks and Romans. Among the gentiles lived also a few Jews who went completely downhill and were pining away. They had a small inn for themselves which they also had to use as synagogue.

## THE LORD IN THE MOUNTAIN CITY PELLA

### 15. THE LORD WITH THE INNKEEPER IN PELLA

E stopped at that inn, and the innkeeper came to meet us and apologized that he could not accommodate us, for firstly his inn was far too small to take us in, and secondly his food provisions were so low that it would not be sufficient for us. But there was a Greek inn in the center of the city that was provided with everything, and there we would find a good accommodation.

[2] **I** said: “I knew this already before you were born, but I did not come here for the sake of the gentiles but only for the sake of the Jews, and if they absolutely do not want to accommodate Me, I still will know what to do. So let us see the space of your inn and your synagogue.”

[3] **The innkeeper** looked at Me astonished and said: “Friend, who are You actually that you plainly speak to me with authority?”

[4] **I** said: “If you would know who I am you would say to Me: ‘Lord, I have a son who suffers from gout, at which many doctors have tried their art. For this reason I became poor, and my son suffers every day worse pains. Help my son, for all things are possible to You.’ But you do not know, and therefore I told you now.”

[5] **When the innkeeper** heard this from My mouth, he thought by himself: “How does this stranger, who never saw this mountain city Pella before, know that my son suffers from gout and that his suffering becomes worse from day to day?”

[6] **Only after that, he turned to Me and said:** “Lord, I clearly can see now that You are not an ordinary man, and if You can heal my son, also I will put everything into action, despite my poverty, to show my gratitude to You and Your companions.”

[7] **I** said: “Then bring Me to your son, then he will be better.”

[8] **Then the innkeeper brought Me to the room of his sick son.**

And around the lamenting and wailing person his mother and sisters were mourning and asked God to finally free the sick person from his suffering.

[9] Then **the innkeeper** said to his family: “Stop your wailing, for look, there is a foreign Doctor who can and will help my son, and I firmly believe that only He can do that.”

[10] **Those who were mourning** said: “If that Doctor can do that, then God the Lord has heard our prayers.”

[11] **I** said: “Yes, yes, He has heard them. And now I say from My own power that lives in Me: you who suffers from gout, I want you to become healthy – and do not sin anymore, for you came to suffer because of your secret sins.”

[12] On these words of Mine, the son became immediately completely healthy, and I said that he should leave his bed and that the mother should prepare something for him to eat, but fresh and pure. This was done at once, and the innkeeper and his healed son did not know how they should thank or even worship Me in the right manner.

[13] But **I** said: “Do not worry in your head and heart as to how you should show your gratitude towards Me, for I only look upon the heart, and I know what goes on in there now. But show Me now your inn and the little synagogue.”

[14] Now the innkeeper did not object anymore to fulfill My wish and brought Me to the rooms of the inn that were finally big enough for us.

## 16. THE LORD IN THE SCHOOL IN PELLA



WHEN he brought us to the synagogue where a few Jewish children received from an old rabbi some dull teaching of the Scripture.

[2] **I** said to the rabbi: “Friend, in this manner you will rather make heathens out of these little ones than Jews. If you yourself are so poorly grounded in the Scripture, then what must these children learn from you? Give up the teaching and do something

else, so that a better teacher can take and occupy your place.”

[3] **The rabbi** was greatly offended and said: “Friend, I was chosen here as rabbi by the community. They are satisfied about me, and You as a stranger should not concern Yourself as to how I am teaching the children. We live here among gentiles, and therefore, besides our Scripture, I also have to teach my scholars the manners and customs of the Romans and Greeks, and also actively recognize the good therein so that they would not call me to account. For we were placed in this world, and besides God – who does not let any manna rain from the sky anymore – we also must serve the world if we want to live from it.”

[4] **I** said: “It is because the Jews were more and more forgetting God, just like you, and were starting to serve the world already at the time when He still let the manna rain from the sky that God let them also come into the hard slavery of the world and they had to earn their meager bread in the sweat of their face. And because the Jews are becoming now less loyal to God than the gentiles, also the little light that they still have will be taken away from them and be given to the gentiles.

[5] How can you be a rabbi that is pleasing to God when today you teach before the Jewish children Jewish *teachings* and tomorrow in this same synagogue you give pagan teachings to the gentile children and let yourself be paid for it?”

[6] **The rabbi** began to take Me for a little prophet because I showed him things which according to him no common person and stranger could otherwise know, and he said: “May God give me to live without it being necessary for me to ask my bread also from the gentiles, then I will immediately give up my service to the gentiles.”

[7] **I** said to the rabbi: “Friend, 10 years ago you were a very wealthy man in Ephraim as a Jew, and you had food and drink in abundance. Then why did you at that time choose more for the gentiles than for the Jews?”

[8] Look, since you have done that without it being necessary,

God let you go down and let you come here in this gentile city as a rabbi for the gentiles. The fact that since a couple of years you also became a rabbi for the Jews, was not accomplished by the poor Jews who live here but by the gentiles who are friendly to you, and these also removed the former purely Jewish rabbi from this city.

[9] But I tell you that in the future this cannot go on. You should become completely a Jew like you were before. Otherwise you will be removed from this city in a few days, and a worthier person will take your place, for I came to sweep up this city so that it will become a safe refuge for all those whom I will call My followers when already in about 50 years the dark Jerusalem will be destroyed up to the last stone by the Romans. Think well about what I have told you now, for I have received the power from above to tell you this.”

[10] Then the rabbi still wanted to answer something but the innkeeper took him aside and told him what I had done for his son. Then the rabbi said no more word, let the scholars of the synagogue go home and left the synagogue. He immediately visited the completely healed son of the innkeeper, and he was extremely amazed about this. Then he went at once to all the Jewish and gentile houses that he knew and related what had happened in the Jewish inn, after which many came to the inn to convince themselves of what had happened there.

## 17. THE EVENING MEAL IN THE INN



OW when many saw the innkeeper’s son whom they knew well and who had been so ill before and was now completely healed, even the gentiles were seized by so much fear of Me that they did not dare to ask for Me.

[2] And even a **Roman captain** said: “There must be higher beings *at work* behind that Doctor and His companions, for we men were never able to accomplish that without any medications.”

[3] I was already in the inn with My disciples, and on that day no one of the many who came to the inn was able to see Me. And this all the more since the evening had already set in.

[4] When the people returned to their houses – being fully amazed and also partly out of fear of Me – **the innkeeper** came to us and said: “O great Lord and Master, everything would now be fine, good and in order if I would have enough food provisions for all of you. Wine I do not have at all, but I will let it be ordered from the Greek inn. I have some wheat *bread* and barley bread and also some smoked lamb. If you are satisfied with that for today I would be very glad about it. I will take better care of everything tomorrow to the best of my ability.”

[5] **I** said: “Friend, we did not come here to eat and to drink, but we will be satisfied with what you have. Do not worry about the wine and do not make unnecessary expenses, but go to your cellar, then you will find there your empty wine sacks filled with wine. For the One who was able to heal your son is also able to fill your empty wine sacks. So go now with your children to the cellar and bring us several carafes filled with wine.

[6] Full of believing amazement the innkeeper took immediately several carafes. He cleaned them, called then all his children as well as his wife and told them what I had said to him. Then they hastily ran to the cellar, and how great was their amazement when they found their formerly empty sacks filled with excellent wine.

[7] Then the carafes were immediately filled and brought to us, and again, the innkeeper, his wife and his children did not know how they could sufficiently thank Me for this. Besides, the miracle was less important to them now, but more so My will that I wanted to make them so happy, for after the healing of their son they did not doubt in the least that everything was possible to Me, whatever I wanted.

[8] But I said to them the same as after the healing of their son: that I only look at the heart. And then they left the room full of joy.

[9] **The woman said to her husband:** “You know, that must be a great prophet. Could He perhaps be the prophet Elijah who should once come back? Therefore, we must serve Him with the highest honor and respect.”

[10] **The innkeeper said:** “Take care now of the table. Whether He is Elijah or even someone higher, or finally the promised Messiah Himself is for the moment not important. What is important now is to satisfy these wonderful guests.”

[11] Then everyone went to work to prepare the food, and the innkeeper brought us bread and asked us to eat it, what we also did. Soon after that, the very well prepared food was set on the table, as well as several lamps by which the dining room was very well illuminated.

[12] We ate the food, and the disciples talked among each other about the history of the Israelites, about the first time when they came out of the desert into this countryside, and about the wars they had to wage against the Moabites and later against the Philistines. The innkeeper related also a few things of what he knew about the origins of the old city of Pella and about the adventures that happened to the city. But I rested and spoke little.

[13] In this way, a couple of hours went by, and then I said to the innkeeper who brought a good resting bed to Me: “Never mind. We will stay here at the table and will take our rest for the night here.”

[14] That was not unpleasant to the innkeeper since he was poorly provided with resting beds. And he himself did not want to leave us and stayed the whole night with us at the table. The night went by very calmly, and no one was disturbed in his rest.



## 18. THE LORD AND THE ROMAN CAPTAIN



IN the morning the innkeeper was the first on his feet and he organized everything for the preparation of a good morning meal, at which his wife, his children and his servants and maid servants were fully put to work.

Immediately after that, we also stood up from our resting chairs and benches at the table and went outside for a while, for we had a really great view from this city over a great part of the beautiful Jordan valley and over the wide, large and still very fruitful plain.

[2] However, that morning was not as quiet as the night, for when we returned to the house for the morning meal, we saw before the house a great crowd who were for the greatest part gentiles. The already mentioned captain and also a few of his subordinates did not lack, neither did the old rabbi.

[3] They all inquired diligently about the miracle of the healing of the son who suffered from gout. They told them how it happened, about which they all were extremely amazed.

[4] Then **the captain** said with a serious face: “You know what? Someone who is capable to do such things without any help of external means is a God and no more a human being. I have seen several times wonders that were done by certain magicians but I soon discovered how they did such wonders, but who can discover here how this Man healed the sick person?”

[5] Others made the remark that what I had in common with the other magicians is that I also was escorted by a big group, just like the other magicians, and that it finally could not be known what exactly the reason was for that.

[6] But **the captain** stayed with his assertion and did not let himself be confused and said: “His companions will never be capable to strengthen His word and His will, for when a sick person is healed, like the son of the Jewish innkeeper, nothing can be accomplished by a certain agreement or by a secret cooperation. If we would all agree with one another here to

firmly fix our will that my eldest daughter would become healthy, who is bedridden for already 3 years with an incurable disease, then we will accomplish nothing by that. But when that Man would want that all by Himself, then my daughter will certainly be very quickly as healthy as the son of this innkeeper.”

[7] That is how the people spoke about Me before the house of the innkeeper while I with My disciples sat down for the morning meal, for we came again into the house unnoticed through the people to the back side, and the personnel and the children of the innkeeper received instruction from him not to betray My presence, except when someone would receive order from Me to do so. They also were not allowed to tell the people anything about the miraculous existence of the wine.

[8] When we finished the morning meal I said to the innkeeper: “Let now the captain with his subordinates, the old rabbi and the innkeeper of the Greek inn come in, then I will speak to them.”

[9] Then the innkeeper went immediately outside to bring the message to those who were mentioned.

[10] They immediately followed the call, and when they were with us in the room, at once the captain asked the innkeeper where I was.

[11] **The innkeeper** brought him to Me and said: “I will always bow my knees for the One who sits on that chair.”

[12] **And the captain** said: “Also I my friend.”

[13] **Then the captain** bowed deeply before Me and said then: “Great Master, a unheard-of miracle You only have performed in this house, and with this You proved to me that You are not a human being like us but must be truthfully a God. If that is what You unmistakably are, then show us the great mercy to tell us what we actually must think about our various matters of belief.

[14] I have examined everything: our doctrine of polytheism, the views of the old Egyptian, Greek and our Roman philosophers. Furthermore, I have studied in detail the Jewish doctrine of the one God, all their prophets and sages. These latter are however

difficult, and for the greatest part even completely not to understand because they are using an all too fantastical, often completely incoherent language, and are using images which they themselves might have understood and grasped but apart from them certainly only very few. I also discussed with many from the far morning lands about supernatural things, about their concepts of God and about the manner in which the human soul continues to live after death, and this I also did with the people in the southwest and northwest of Europe.

[15] But what did I discover out of all that? I say it honestly: everything except that which I sought, namely a truth that can convince me and that I can understand.

[16] The belief in one or also several invisible divine beings is present everywhere, but how different *they are*. It is not necessary here to represent the almost endless mess of all those supernatural fantasies of the people regarding their concept of God and the continuance of the life of the soul after the death of the body, but it concerns here only the real life's question: which doctrine has the truth? Are all those people right who believe in many gods in different ways, or those who believe in one God?

[17] If we consider the laws of our Roman justice, which are good in all respects, and thus the most useful for the subsistence of the communities of people and even nations, then the most valuable still seems to be our polytheism, that is of course very distorted but which has finally laid the foundation for our wise and really righteous state laws. But the Jewish doctrine of one God, which has great similarities with the initial Egyptian doctrine, seems nevertheless to stand much closer to the truth of life, although it is now much more distorted among the Jews than ours, for one has only to take a close look at the extremely godless and unscrupulous doings of the Jewish priests in Jerusalem to realize and to recognize that they are much more dumb and evil than our different priests in various forms.

[18] You, divine Man of Wonders, can certainly give me in a

few words the right light of the truth.”

[19] **I** said: “My friend Pellagius, captain over this city and 3 other cities, Abila, Golan and Aphek. I came here especially for you, for I surely knew that you already for almost 30 years have zealously searched for the truth, but could nevertheless not find it.

[20] But since you have searched for the truth as only few of your people and rank *have done*, I, the eternal initial Truth have come Myself to you. So in Me you have found the full, clear and pure truth, and My light will enlighten you so thoroughly that you yourself will become a light for many others.

[21] But your eldest daughter Veronica is sick, and no doctor can help her. If you will believe it and wish for it, she certainly will be better.”

[22] Completely overwhelmed by joy, **the captain** said: “Yes Lord and Master, full of divine power, I believe that, as maybe few in the whole of the Jewish kingdom. And as her father I also wish, with all the power of my life, the healing of my daughter, but I am not worthy that You, Holy One, would come under my gentile roof to heal there my daughter who is already close to death.

[23] And that I fully believe Your words, proves already the fact that I was not surprised when You, who are a stranger and have never visited this region, knew my name, which I received from this city as a token of honor, and knew about my authority over the 3 cities, which You also named, and now also the name of my sick daughter, for my mind said that You are a God and that everything is possible to You. Therefore, I believe that my daughter will most certainly be healed if You only speak one word over her.”

[24] **I** said: “Truly, I did not find such faith in the people of Israel. Therefore, it will be done according to your faith. Now send someone to your house and let your daughter come here, who is already healthy, so that she can be strengthened with this wine and this bread.”

## 19. THE HEALED VERONICA THANKS THE LORD



WHEN the captain heard this from My mouth, he became extremely cheerful and joyful and sent immediately one of his subordinates to his house. He found the daughter still in her sick bed but so completely healthy that she looked very fresh, fit and in great health, and because she also was, she wanted to leave her bed. But her mother held her back because she thought that this sudden improvement was a last flaring up of her life's forces after which an equal sudden exhaustion of all her life's forces would follow and with that also a sudden death.

[2] The subordinate told the mother now about the sudden healing of the son of the innkeeper who was now completely strong and healthy. *And that* only a few moments ago, on the faithful request of the captain, that same wonderful mighty Doctor also healed her daughter from all her suffering, without any medication and only by His incomprehensible almighty Word.

[3] He said that the mother should believe that, and that she should let her completely healed daughter come out of her bed and bring her immediately to the Jewish innkeeper where the wonderful Doctor is staying with several of His companions and also the captain. *He said that* the daughter should take there some wine and also food to strengthen her more.

[4] After these words, the mother let Veronica leave her bed.

[5] She did so, fast as an arrow, and dressed herself as beautiful as possible, for she wanted to appear before Me as pure and beautiful as when she had to appear before a king.

[6] Now when she was completely dressed and adorned, she also took a beautiful golden cup with her to honor Me with that.

[7] This is how she came to us, escorted by her mother and the subordinate. And her first question was (**Veronica**): "Where is my Savior, my God and my Lord?"

[8] **I** said: "It is I. Come here and strengthen your heart with the

wine and the bread from the Heavens that I have put on this table.”

[9] When **Veronica** heard this from Me, she fell before Me on her knees and said: “O my good, lovely and divine Savior, how can I, a poor, sinful gentile, thank You for the overly great and eternal undeserved mercy that You have shown me, in such a way that my gratitude can be pleasing to Your divine Heart?”

[10] **I** said: “Stand up now, come and sit at My side, and drink and eat, for by that, your heart and soul will become stronger still. After that, we will talk in all the love and the tenderness of the Heavens of the only gratitude that is pleasing to Me.”

[11] On this, the now very beautiful **Veronica** stood up and put down the golden cup before Me and said full of emotion, but also with Roman dignified earnest: “O You most glorious One of all the glories, You Lord of all lords, You King of all kings, You God of all gods, please do not despise this jewel of mine. I know and feel in my soul that it is too unworthy to You, but consider that it is a heart that loves You and that was healed by You that offers this to You. And therefore, please do not despise it.”

[12] **I** said: “Yes, what is offered to Me with such a heart, will also be accepted by Me. And I will now drink the wine out of this cup. And there you have My cup, out of which I drank. You drink the wine out of this.”

[13] Then **Veronica** took My cup that was only made of pottery, drank out of it and then said: “O how many kingdoms is this cup more valuable than the one I have dared to offer You, for now that I have drunk out of this cup I do not only feel that I have drunk the most strengthening wine for my body but also the power of the eternal life of my soul.

[14] O, drink you all with me out of this cup if you still doubt about the eternal life of your soul. Then you will be strengthened for the eternal life.”

[15] Now she filled the cup and gave it to her father who had still not tasted any of our wine. He emptied it completely, then

he kissed the cup and put it down again before the daughter while he thanked Me.

[16] The captain was really surprised about the extremely good quality of the wine and said also that he was now aware that he had a soul who felt an eternal subsistence of life in himself and that he was extremely happy about that. Then also his wife, his subordinates and finally the Greek gentile innkeeper drank *the wine*.

[17] When the latter had tasted the wine, he asked at once to the **Jewish innkeeper (the Greek innkeeper)**: “Where did you buy this wine? For as long as I live and am now an innkeeper myself, I never tasted such wine. For special guest, if they want, I also have very good wine in my cellar and helped you with it already several times, and you can say that I never offered you anything bad. But I never had this kind of wine. Where did you buy it? Tell me, so that I also can buy it.”

[18] **The Jewish innkeeper said**: “Friend, you probably will not be able to do that, for such wine does not grow on the whole Earth. Did you not hear what the great Wonder Savior said to the daughter of our righteous captain as to from where the wine came? Look, from the Heavens of God. However, not from your fantasy god Bacchus, but from the Heavens of our one and only true God whose messenger is most certainly this exalted Wonder Savior. This is how it is and not otherwise, and it will be difficult for you to buy with your money that kind of wine in this region.”

[19] **The Greek innkeeper said**: “Then how did you get it?”

[20] **The Jewish innkeeper said**: “That is what you should not ask me but the great Master for whom all things seem to be possible, and I also believe now what the captain and his daughter said about Him. So speak with the Master, for I, a weak man who is still full of spiritual blindness and foolishness, do not know nor understand anything.”

[21] **Then the Greek innkeeper kept silent.**

## 20. THE LORD WARNS THE RABBI



UT the old rabbi, who so far did not dare to taste of the wine, came to Me and asked Me for permission to also have a drink of the wonder wine.

[2] **I** said: “Although you are more gentile than all the other gentiles, without considering that no one can serve 2 lords who are each others enemies, because he secretly must be the enemy of the one or the other and must by that still do for each one of them what is required from him. Or can someone serve God and the mammon of the world at the same time? And still, you have done that for a long time. Thus, change your heart and drink of the wine of truth, so that your soul may be enlightened.”

[3] Then the rabbi took also a cup full of wine and drank it to the bottom.

[4] When he had the wine in him, he also burst out in a great eulogy about the wine and My power, and at the end of his eulogy, swinging the cup up high that was filled once more, he said (**the rabbi**): “Yes, You are indeed the One for who all the Jews and also the gentiles have waited so long. Therefore, hail You, Son of David, and hail also all men on Earth through You. Honor to God on high and honor to You, His Son.”

[5] **I** said: “Now your words were good, but if you will cry out once more ‘Hail the high gods of Rome’ death will not be far away from you. To be truthfully a friend for all men, whether they are Jews or gentiles, is good and right, and is also My will, for I also let My sun shine and radiate over the Jews and gentiles in the same measure. But to still strengthen men in their error, who languish for the truth in their old blindness, instead of guiding them to the way of the original light out of true, pure and selfless neighborly love, is worse than being a thief and a street robber. Remember that, old, ambiguous teacher who often taught the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob to the Jews with fervent zeal, but immediately after that, you went to the school of the gentiles and then spoke lowly and scornfully about the



God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and made Him ridiculous. Be either a complete Jew or become a gentile if you find greater satisfaction in the heathendom for your chameleon-like<sup>1</sup> soul.”

[6] **The rabbi** said: “Lord, be forgiving and merciful to me, a great sinner against You, and forgive me my many and big sins.”

[7] **I** said: “As far as I am concerned, they are forgiven, but see to it also that they will also be forgiven by the people to whose souls you have caused much harm for the sake of the reward.”

[8] **On this, the captain** said to Me: “Lord, I will arrange this matter for him, and he will have understood now himself what he will have to do in the future. But I think that we will not need a gentile priest anymore in the future. It will be the same if our children will be taught in reading, writing and counting by gentile or Jewish teachers, and so this rabbi can continue to teach our children in these 3 subjects. However, what concerns religion, I will take care of it myself that our old polytheism will be changed as soon as possible in a monotheism. But now I ask You, divine Master and Lord, and from now on our God, that You should show us, who were gentiles up to now, the right way that we should go in the future, for until now we are still standing in the old darkness.”

[9] **Then I** preached about the Kingdom of God on Earth to them, and taught these gentiles in all things in the same manner as I had done in other places.

[10] **That teaching** lasted 7 full hours, thus almost until 3 hours after midday. And they all believed in Me – also those who were outside of the house, since they heard My words through the open windows.

[11] **Only after I** had finished My preaching, the midday meal was served, at which also those had to participate who had become believing outside.

---

<sup>1</sup> Chameleon-like person: person who frequently changes his ideas.

## 21. THE DISCIPLES AND THE LORD TEACH THE INHABITANTS OF PELLA



AFTER the meal that lasted more than 1 hour, I walked with the captain around the city and healed all those who were sick. And more and more people followed Me. But My disciples stayed in the inn and taught the Jews.

[2] Close to the evening I came back with the captain to the inn where the disciples were still in full discussion with the Jews. These finally accepted Me as the promised Messiah, but could nevertheless not understand why I came into this world in such discreet appearance whereas the great king David spoke as follows about Me: ‘Make the gates wide and the doors high, so that the King of Honor can come in. Who is the King of Honor? It is the Lord Jehovah Zebaoth.’

[3] They, the Jews of Pella, did however not know that at My arrival in this world, in some cities a gate was widened and a door heightened.

[4] My teaching and the signs I did corresponded indeed with what especially the prophet Isaiah and the prophet Ezekiel prophesied about the promised Messiah, but, according to them, My appearance among the people in this world did not correspond with what the prophets had prophesied about the Messiah. And so the disciples had a hard time with the Jews.

[5] When I came into the room with the captain, his subordinates, his wife and his healed daughter, as well as the healed son of the innkeeper, there was a silence among the Jews and they looked at Me to see whether they could notice anything about Me that was exceptional.

[6] But I said to them: “Peace be with you. What you search about Me and try to find out, will at no time come with outer splendor, but is inside man.

[7] Yes, the Jews should have widened the gates of their hearts and heightened the doors of their souls at My arrival, but for already a long time they did not pay any attention at the call of

David. That is also why they came into the Babylonian captivity and became slaves of the gentiles, out of which slavery they never will be freed if they will persist in their old stubbornness.

[8] But there are the gentiles. They have immediately greatly widened the gates of their heart at My appearance, and heightened the doors of their soul unto far above all stars. Therefore, the light of the Jews will be taken away and be given to the gentiles.”

[9] When I had said that to the Jews, some of them were offended about that, but the gentiles praised Me greatly for this.

[10] On this, **the captain** said very loudly to the Jews: “What are you sitting and examining there?! Can you still not believe after all the Lord has done for us! Withdraw into your dark rooms and stay in your old night of every doubt and do not hinder us in this room that is too small anyway!”

[11] On these words of the captain that sounded very commanding, the more unbelieving Jews withdrew and went outside. But the Jews who were more believing stayed and still wanted to discuss with the disciples about a few things.

[12] But I said to them: “You have heard the full truth from the mouth of My disciples, and there is no other more extended truth. Believe it and act accordingly, then your hearts and souls will be enlightened, still wider and higher.

[13] Go and investigate outside and see how many gentiles I have made healthy this afternoon and how many I have freed from all their suffering, so that you can be enlightened by the gentiles, and not the gentiles by you. It is true that the light went out from the Jews but the gentiles saw and recognized it earlier than the Jews. Therefore, they also will keep the light, and the Jews will have to receive it from them if they want to have it. So you also go outside now and let yourselves be enlightened by the gentiles.”

[14] When the more believing Jews heard that from My mouth, they went immediately outside to the rejoicing gentiles, and they heard how these highly glorified and praised the God in Me of

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and they were not little surprised when they heard this from the mouth of the gentiles and from those who were sick and were healed. Then most of the Jews believed also, went home and discussed with each other about all the things they had heard from the disciples before and what I had said to them. The glorifying words of the gentiles made their hearts wider and the thoughts of their souls higher, and they came to understand what David had meant with his psalm.

[15] But we partook of the well-prepared evening meal and discussed with each other about all the things that happened that afternoon.

## 22. THE LORD WITH THE CAPTAIN VIEW THE DAWNING MORNING ON A HILL



AFTER the meal, the captain, his wife and his daughter Veronica thanked Me for everything that they were able to achieve through Me.

[2] I said: “On the one hand it is your faith that helped you, and on the other hand I through your faith and through your quickly ignited love for Me, and with that also for the One who lives in Me and whom you will still come to know more clearly when My Spirit of eternal truth and wisdom will soon be poured out over you. But now you also should go home and rest until tomorrow. But then come back here and we still will discuss about many things with each other.”

[3] Then the captain and all who were with him stood up, gave Me all honor and went to their homes. There they still discussed with each other for a few nightly hours about all the things that had happened during the day.

[4] The old rabbi and the Greek innkeeper stayed with us until midnight, and in a corner of the room they discussed with each other about the unbelief of some Jews who should be the ones to stand closer to the truth.

[5] Finally **the rabbi** said: “That also confirms the statement of

the prophet: 'For worldly wise men and the intelligent it will remain hidden, and to those under age it will be revealed.' Of old, the children of the light sat always by the full dishes with the bread of light from the Heavens, and they did not have to suffer hunger. But because they never had to suffer hunger or thirst, they forgot the high quality food from the Heavens and returned to the disgusting food of the world, as I unfortunately had done also.

[6] But the gentiles who hungered for light noticed how the chosen children of the light turned more and more their back to the Heavenly food, and they came to take possession of the full dishes. They read our books with great zeal, and in that manner they satiated themselves already beforehand with our bread from the Heavens. And that is why they are now much stronger than we, and have recognized the Lord much easier and with greater certainty than we. But He also will be recognized by us Jews."

[7] The Jewish and also the Greek innkeeper agreed with the rabbi and went then to rest.

[8] I rested also that night with the disciples at the dining table until the morning.

[9] In the morning I stood up from the table and let the disciples rest. I quickly went outside, to the other end outside of this city. Nobody in the house knew where I had gone.

[10] Only a servant of the captain saw Me walking through the city and told it quickly to the captain who was already awake. He dressed himself quickly and hurried after Me in the direction that the servant indicated to him.

[11] When he arrived at the mentioned end of the city, he saw Me on a hill. At once he climbed upon the hill to Me.

[12] When he was near Me, he bowed deeply before Me and asked what made Me decide to make a morning trip without any disciples to this eastern side of the city Pella.

[13] I said: "Be patient a little more, then you shortly will come to know. Let now first the sun come up above the horizon, then I will reveal why I have chosen this spot for this morning."

[14] Then we took place on a flat basalt rock from where we very peacefully could view the events of the morning.

[15] Clouds with golden edges floated over the horizon, and seen from our spot, very few mountains with a height of any importance could be seen because the land became partly already much flatter from our city towards the far Euphrates desert. However, the sunrise was more beautiful there because it rose in blood-red colors as if from the deep, and colored the high mountain tops in the west, which also the captain highly praised as a beautiful scene of nature.

[16] He only asked Me how I, who at every moment can have endlessly much greater beauties of Heaven at My disposal, could be pleased at this earthly natural beauty.

[17] **I** said to him: “Friend, if the Master Himself cannot be pleased in His works, then who can be? Or do you think that the Master would have created all these works if He would not have clearly seen them in His Spirit already a long time beforehand while He was extremely pleased with it? But if you see that I am pleased with this morning scene, then its reason will now surely be clear to you.”

[18] **The captain** said: “Look, o Lord and Master, if I now think about Your answer, which is clearer than the most clear drop of water, then I am surprised about my own stupidity that something like that did not come into my mind, which is apart from that not weak, for I not only firmly believe but am also fully convinced who the One is in You who immensely mercifully is standing before me.”

[19] **I** said: “Do not worry about that. For the world is arranged by Me in such a way that everything must very gradually unfold and develop itself. Look at the existence of the day, look at the development of the plants, the animals and finally still more so of men. Then you easily will understand for which reason not everything at your first arrival in My Kingdom cannot be as clear yet as it later will be for you when My Spirit will expand itself more and more in you and when in one moment you will

grasp and better understand things than had been possible to you up to now after years of thinking. So you can be completely at ease about this now because you are already on the best road. So let us continue to watch the scenes of the beautiful morning.”

### 23. THE DISCIPLES SEARCH FOR THE LORD

**T**HEN we watched the different phenomena of the morning, I explained them to the captain who was extremely grateful for that and was very surprised, for many things of the old mythical elements of the imaginative heathendom from his early youth were still hidden in him, of which he could not fully rid himself in one moment.

[2] But what happened in the mean time in our Jewish inn this morning?

[3] When My disciples woke up and were missing Me, as also the innkeeper with his family, they all became afraid and seriously wondered whereto I could have gone all alone this morning, and why.

[4] **Peter** said: “But you know that, as long as we are with Him, He always used to go outside every morning before sunrise. He surely will come back at the right time. So let us not be anxiously worried about Him.”

[5] **On this, James** said: “Although you are right, but I also know better than anyone of you – since I was always near to Him from His childhood and went along with Him – that He also sometimes likes to hide Himself for a short time from those who are His loved ones, and that He then likes to see when they will seriously search for Him, will find Him and will express their great joy about that when they found Him back. So we also should search for Him this time, and very zealously.”

[6] **Now also Judas Iscariot** wanted to make a controversial remark, but **John** sharply interrupted him immediately with the words: “You were, are and remain a disciple of Him who still did not absorb a spark of the spirit of truth. You are for the

greatest part an imagined sage and with this you are lying to yourself and to many others. So you better keep quiet and let those speak who want to speak in His Spirit and who can do that through His mercy.”

[7] Then the rebuked disciple did not say anything anymore and went alone outside where he met a few Jews who asked him if I was in the house and what I was doing.

[8] But **the disciple** said: “Go and search for Him yourselves, for I did not receive any command to tell anyone anything about Him.”

[9] Then the disciple went further and watched the old city of which the houses were mostly built with black pieces of basalt, for there was little wood available in this environment for construction.

[10] The disciples who stayed in the house, discussed further with each other as to what they should do. They finally all agreed with James and wanted to search for Me.

[11] But a servant of the captain – but not the one who saw Me early in the morning walking before the house of the captain, but one that was sent by his daughter – asked for Me and the captain to know if he was perhaps with Me, since he left the house very early and very hurriedly. But this servant could not receive any information from the disciples.

[12] Then **James** said: “Hey, it is as if a flash of lightning went through my soul now. Since the captain left the house so early, he saw the Lord walking and he followed Him. One of his servants will know in which direction he saw him leaving the house. Let us go there, then good news will be given to us.”

[13] After these words of James, they all stood up and went to the house of the captain. There they soon met the servant who was on guard and he told them in which direction he saw Me and then also the captain going.

[14] When the disciples and also the innkeeper heard that, they went immediately further in the same direction and came soon on the spot outside of the city where I was together with



the captain.

[15] But since I and the captain were sitting on a block of basalt of which the back side hid us, those who searched did not see us that quickly.

[16] But **James** said: “Let us now go upon this rocky height, from there we surely will be able to see far and from there we certainly will see the Lord walking somewhere.”

[17] Then they all climbed up, and when they came completely on top, they soon saw Me and the captain.

[18] They all were very happy to have found Me. Only **Simon Judah** walked towards Me and said with a friendly face: “But Lord and Master, look, we were anxious and sad because we did not know where You had gone this morning. If You would have told us something about it, we all would have gone with You at once as *we* always *do* and we would not have had to worry about You. We ask You not to do this again to us in this environment that is strange for us, but if You would like to go somewhere alone according to Your wisdom, then tell us to stay alone, then we certainly will never go against Your holy will. For look, we love You above all, and therefore we become worried when only for a few moments we do not know where You are and what You do.”

[19] **I** said: “Come now, I would have told you if I would not have known beforehand that you would search for Me and certainly find Me. Besides, it did not harm any of you that I have strengthened your love for Me again. But I had to do something alone with this new friend and so I walked alone to this place.

[20] This city and its environment will be a refuge for those who believe in Me at the time of the great humiliation of Jerusalem, as I already pointed out to you, and that is why already now a good foundation has to be laid here for a strong community in My name by this friend who has authority over many gentiles. And with this you know now also why I wanted to be completely alone with the captain.

[21] But if My absence of only a few moments made you now

already so worried, then what will you do when I will leave you with My body for a longer time?”

[22] **Simon Judah** said again: “Lord and Master, we well know what You want to say to us by that. If it must be so according to Your decree, we will bear Your absence, which will be very sad for us, in the hope that all the other things that You have revealed to us will also most certainly be fulfilled. But that no one of us wants to be close to that time, this You can read in our hearts. But always only Your will be done.”

## 24. THE CAPTAIN COMFORTS THE DISCIPLES



**WHEN** the captain said to the one to who I just said what would happen to Me in Jerusalem, and that he should not be offended about it when he will hear about it:

“Friends, also I know now what makes your heart so sad. But if this is the only way to break the stubbornness of many unbelievers in Jerusalem and to make them seeing and believing, I cannot help but to glorify, praise and love our Lord and Master and God even more, for only the highest and purest love of God can bear this from His created beings. Our human love would not be able to do that.

[2] Besides, the Lord will be in our midst again after 3 days, and will fill us with His mighty Spirit, and in this manner He will stay with His followers until the end of this Earth. So I think that we have all reason to rejoice about all the things that He has determined and that He wants to bear for the possible salvation of all men. For those fools, who are full of blindness, can in their wild rage assault the body of the Lord and also kill Him, if He will allow it for the improvement of the blind ones – feeling obliged by His love for us men – but who will be able to kill the eternal, almighty divine Being in His body? It will revive His exalted body again, and on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day He will be again with us just like now, so that we can be extremely joyful about this.

[3] Friends, if I would allow the least of doubt in myself about

that, then on my intervention, 100,000 of the bravest soldiers would stand already within 2 weeks before the walls of Jerusalem, because I am captain of the first and highest rank and have received all authority from Rome, and within a few weeks not one stone would stand upon the other. But because the Lord first wants to accomplish the greatest wonder in that godless city, there will be always time enough for the destruction of that evil city, for if the people would still not repent after that greatest sign of the Lord by their evil but still free will and as a result of their love for the world and their self love, which is also possible, then we Romans will come and preach a completely different gospel to them with the sword – the gospel of the kingdom of the devil and all his furies.

[4] Then it will be no more: ‘Peace be with you’, but: ‘Death will come over you, because you did not want to recognize the time in which God the Lord Himself personally visited you.’

[5] So let us be cheerful and joyful, for all that the Lord wills, does and allows is so endlessly good that we cannot imagine. We can very cheerfully go home now and partake of a very well-prepared morning meal, if this is well pleasing to You, o Lord?”

[6] **I** said: “Sure, because the servants of our innkeeper did their utmost best to prepare a very good morning meal for us. Also your wife and your daughter went very soon after the departure of the disciples to the woman of the innkeeper to ask for Me, and they very zealously worked together to prepare the morning meal. So we can break up and go slowly to the inn. But let us make a small detour outside of the city to go there, so that not too many people in the city would notice us, who would then massively follow us.”

[7] That seemed a very good idea to the captain, and we took the suggested way.

[8] Along the way, the disciples were surprised about the wisdom of the captain, and **Simon Judah** said: “This was also not given to him by his flesh and blood, but *by* the Lord.

However, in one time more than to us since the time that we are with Him. But the Lord will know why.”

[9] **I** said: “Because in one time he came to Me with more than you since you are with Me. But when after My glorification My Spirit will fill your heart, you also will be lead into all wisdom.”

[10] With this, My disciples were also satisfied, and they all became very cheerful, because the words of the captain had a good influence on them that lasted with them for a longer time, but of course, it gradually lost its strength again.

[11] Now we reached our inn where the disciple Judas Iscariot was in discussion with some Jews. When he saw us, he went into the house and let the Jews alone because the smell of the food attracted him already very much.

[12] Also the few Jews wanted to enter the house, but **the innkeeper** said: “Friends, you know about the little space of my inn, so stay for the time being in the front garden, and if you need something, it will be brought to you. After we will have finished the morning meal, there still will be time to present your request, but give us some rest during the meal.”

[13] Then the Jews stayed in the front garden and ordered some bread and wine against the payment of 6 pennies.

## 25. VERONICA’S MORNING MEAL



W E went to the dining room where the daughter of the captain came to meet Me very kindly and thanked Me for the mercy of being worthy to see Me once again and to put the food before Me that she had prepared for Me.

[2] I commended her and went to sit at the table. And the daughter set a golden platter with a few very well prepared fishes before Me, and a white wheat bread and the golden cup full of wine. For the others, a completely roasted calve was set on several platters before the disciples.

[3] According to Roman custom, cooked beef with a very seasoned smelling broth was served for the captain, his also

present subordinates and his wife and daughter. And the morning meal tasted extremely well to all of them, and the wine and the bread were not spared.

[4] Veronica asked Me if the fishes that were prepared by her tasted good.

[5] I said: “Just look at the platter and see if I had left anything. Every food that is offered in love by men to Me, tastes good to Me. You prepared these fishes *that are* of the noblest kind from the Lake of Galilee with the fire of your love, and that is why they tasted extremely good to Me.

[6] Although I do not need to receive food for My body from you men, but I nevertheless accept it out of love for them. For they can give Me nothing that I have not given them before, but if, with true love, they give Me back what I gave them before, I also accept it with all love and great joy of heart as if they had given it to Me from their possessions.

[7] This is also the case when you give something to a poor person out of love for Me, for when someone gives something out of true love for Me, and from that for his needy fellowman, I accept it completely as if he had done it for Me Myself, and I will reward him here and in the beyond.

[8] Remember these words of Mine very well and act accordingly, then you always can expect My full love. But you also liked very much to eat such fishes. Why did you not prepare a few also for yourself today?”

[9] Somewhat shy, **Veronica** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, I would have done that, but there were no more in our fish tanks. And even those 4 that I gave You must have come there by a miracle, for the servant himself, who takes care of our food, told me so when I asked him for fish. He thought that there would be no more fishes left at all, but when he went to see anyway and saw the fishes therein, he said: ‘Truly, this is a miracle, for already for a couple of months no fishes could be seen or discovered there.’ And I believe that servant, because I never caught him lying. So these fishes are thus really a miracle,

and so I truly gave You, o Lord, only what You have given me before.”

[10] **I** said: “My dear Veronica, it may have partly happened with your fishes as you think now, for they are My gift anyway, even if it was not such a miracle as you asserted. Your fish tanks are already very old and has many corners in which such fishes can easily hide for a long time to appear then at a certain moment, which was then also the case with your fishes, but that they hid until today and that no one could discover them, that was My will.

[11] But if you are very fond of such fishes, then send a servant to your fish tanks, then there certainly will still be a few. And when you will find them, then prepare them for the midday meal for Me, for you and also for the others. We all will have enough.”

## 26. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE LORD’S TEACHING IN RELATION TO HIS DEEDS



WHEN Veronica, the captain, his wife and his subordinates heard what I said, they went, without wasting another word, quickly to the fish tanks that were near a spring on the land of the innkeeper and which the captain had rented from the innkeeper because the innkeeper never had fishes anyway – and they found all the fish tanks filled with the most noble fishes.

[2] Full of amazement **they all** came back quickly and said: “O Lord and Master in Your Spirit already since eternity, this is a real miracle, and we all see now very clearly that no one on Earth can give You anything which he did not receive from You first. All thanks to You for this gift as for each other *gift*, for You only are the miraculous eternal Giver of all gifts, and we, all too often ungrateful men, are the main receivers. Therefore, to You only *we give* all thanks, all glory, all praise and all our love.”

[3] **I** said: “Well now, although this is good and just, but do not make a sensation in front of the people.”

[4] **The captain** said: “Lord, we will never do or undertake anything against Your will, but allow me to write a secret letter about this to many of my friends in Rome, for these things should not remain hidden for the brighter men that I know.”

[5] **I** said: “Friend, Rome has been taken care of already, and your friend Agricola and also several of his companions know Me much better than you do now, but in My name you can take care of this community that I entrusted to you. Then My reward for you will not fail.

[6] But do not talk there also too much about the signs that I have performed on special occasions, but all the more about My teaching by which all men are called for the eternal life in My Kingdom. For nobody will be blissful by only My miracles, but only if he believes in Me and lives and acts according to My teaching.

[7] Although one can be forced to believe by My signs – which is not very useful to his soul – but the one who recognizes Me by My words, who believes in Me and lives and acts according to My teaching from his completely free will that is not coerced, stands much higher in My Kingdom than the one who came to believe in Me and My teaching by My signs. Remember this well and do not make a big sensation of My signs.

[8] The one in whom the spirit of truth will prevail, will also recognize the truth of My words without any outer sign and will become entirely free in that truth and will reject everything that binds him.

[9] My teaching will remain and will never pass away throughout eternity, but all the signs that I have performed, and will still perform, will in the course of time, as any other historical story, for the greatest part here and there be preserved from mouth to mouth, with many changes and falsifications, and will in later times be hardly believed by the enlightened people, or not at all. But by the pure truth of My teaching, the people

will become easily aware, also in much later times, of who the One was who gave that truth to the people. So do not make too much sensation of My deeds, except those of My love.”

[10] This had a good influence on the Romans who otherwise attached great importance to signs and wonders, but by this lesson of Mine they came to see things quite differently and better.

## 27. THE OBJECTIONS OF THE SUBOFFICER



SUBOFFICER, who was also an educated Roman, said after some deep reflection: “Lord and Master, although

I can see the truth of the wise advice that You have given us, but I still would like to make a small objection.

[2] If at the spreading of Your teaching we cannot make a sensation of Your signs and deeds that can only be done by a God, then You are in the eyes of the usually natural thinking man a very wise teacher of the people who draws out of the best intelligent basics and gives the best teaching to his fellowmen, but by that You still will not be a God. For with all the nations that we know, especially those from ancient times, there have been wise teachers who instructed men in all kinds of useful things and who also educated them in the perception of a God, which became however very distorted in the course of time.

[3] Those teachers were for their office surely also instructed by Your Spirit, but by that they were not directly You Yourself. And so it was quite possible that their teachings were not considered as a living word of God but were only seen as a wise human word that came from the experience and attentive observation of nature and its changing phenomena of many men in many ages, which was used in various ways in practical life for the benefit of men.

[4] The miner learned about the metals and how to work with them, the farmer grew grain on the fields, the gardener pruned the fruit trees, the grapevines and still other fruits and medicinal



herbs, the shepherd took care of his flock in an ordered manner, they built better houses and finally big cities, and man also clothed himself more and more efficiently.

[5] All these useful things for life, and still much more, came thanks to several very wise teachers, and surely, we ourselves still owe them many thanks, for otherwise, without them, we still would be like the extremely rude and very barbaric hordes of the Scythes who live with their wild herds in the holes of the Earth and in old, hollow trees, who do not really have a language but howl like the animals in the forest and have not any idea of a divinity, neither have they any other kind of development.

[6] A wise teacher did certainly never arise among these people. And that is why they are still in a condition that is little different from that of the wild animals. Once one or more wise teachers will arise among them, they also will gradually reach a higher human level of development. But no matter what kind of wise principals of life such teacher will set up for his people, bringing his people to a higher level, will he by that be an only true God like You? And will he be capable to heal the sick only by his will and by his living word, fill empty wine sacks with the best of wine and the tanks with fish in one moment?

[7] So there is an enormous difference between the people being taught about everything by an awakened human teacher or – as this is here now very obvious and unmistakably the case – directly by God Himself.

[8] That is why, according to my human intellectual opinion, men should not only receive Your very wise and true teaching but also *know* that this teaching did not come as in ancient times through the mouth of a wise person, but directly from the mouth of God, who according to His eternal decree has physically assumed the human nature and form. And also that these deeds, which can only be performed by God and of which thousands of witnesses can testify, have very clearly proven that He is not a human being, but according to the full and undisputable truth

the only true God Himself.

[9] In order to let the blind people understand and make it clear to them about the actual truth of life, of which they still by far do not have the least of notion, Your miracles cannot and should not be kept secret, but one should proclaim them faithfully and truthfully as to how, where and by which occasion they were performed by You, and be proclaimed to the people together with the teaching of salvation.

[10] I do not want to directly assert that one should pass on to people absolutely everything that You performed in the many places where Your divine feet have walked and *that You have* visited, but the most important deeds should not be forgotten.

[11] Whether the people who will live much later will entirely consider them as pious historical myths, will in my opinion not be very harmful to the truth of Your teaching. Because to those who will discover the divinity of Your personality in the teaching, Your deeds will also be true and very understandable. But those *who will not accept* Your teaching because of the deeds that You performed in our presence, because they will seem perhaps too incredible to them, will also without knowing Your deeds find as little the truth of life in Your teaching as up till now the temple servants in Jerusalem and the Pharisees in other places. Lord and Master, am I right or not?"

## 28. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE TRUTH



SAID: "You should not have used so many words here, then I also would have understood the good will and the pure attitude of your very clear mind. But since you have spoken, it is also good for the sake of the others, because you spoke very well.

[2] I also did not say that the one who proclaims My teaching to other people should not mention My deeds at all, but not too much sensation should be made of it. And then by preference only those deeds should be mentioned that I have done to people

out of pure love, as a Doctor and Helper, to one person or to several people who were in the greatest need.

[3] And no sensation should be made of those deeds – although I also performed them out of love for the people – that were done to convince them more quickly of the truth of My teaching, which is only necessary especially in this time, but not in future times in which My word will already perform signs by itself. For this would soon increase people’s desire and make them long more for all kinds of wonders than for the influence of the true life which My teaching has in man. And people who are eager for wonders will also more easily and sooner be dissuaded from the actual, inner truth of life by false wonders that are performed by false teachers and prophets, than those who will carefully examine everything and who will only keep for themselves what is good and true.

[4] To all those who, without doubting and actively, will firmly adhere to the truth of My teaching, I will give the power to perform all kinds of signs of pure love in My name anyway. In this way, My word will perform wonders of itself, which will certainly be more useful for the spreading of My teaching than if you would relate to the people all the many thousands of signs that I have performed.

[5] If out of the living spirit of My word, the gift to perform signs will be given to you, you should not publicly make a big scene out of it, for by that you would do much more harm to the good cause of the truth of My teaching than be useful. Because everything that is imposed and forced does not awake My Spirit in the soul, or only partly here and there.

[6] Only the free, personally chosen and not enforced truth, which is the actual light and life of My Spirit of love in the human soul, can do that. So perform wonders as few as possible for those people who thirst for the truth if you do not want to make half dead believing dolls out of them.

[7] However, if you have performed one or the other sign before people who are experienced in all kinds of worldly sciences,

then do not neglect to show them the cause of the success, so that by that, also their faith in Me will be more alive. The cause however, is always only Me, and without Me no one is capable to perform anything that is truthful.

[8] As to how it should be explained to people with an already clearer spirit and stronger will, no one of you should crack his head on that, for if someone of you will need it, then it also will be laid in his mouth, word for word. Because those who love Me and keep My commandments, I Myself will in the spirit of all truth go to them and reveal Myself to them. Then they will hear from Myself of all the things I have taught and done in this time.

[9] For if you would want to have them written down in books, with all the circumstances and additional events, you would need more than 1,000 writers for as long as 100 years. And if then everything would be written down in the almost countless many books, who would read them all, while being directly able to act according to My teaching which he could hardly hastily read in the many books, even in several hundreds of years? With this, you will all realize now why you should not make a great sensation of the signs that I have performed. The truth will work for itself.

[10] If you have understood this, then let us go outside, then I will strengthen you and tell you about all the things which still have to happen today.”

[11] Now they all praised My wisdom, stood up together from the table and went with Me outside, upon a hill near the city of Pella.

## 29. THE QUESTION OF THE CAPTAIN PELLAGIUS ABOUT POSSESSION



WHEN we were all on the mentioned hill from where a part of the Lake of Galilee as well as the cities Abila, Golan and Aphek could be seen, I laid the hands upon all those who were present and gave them the power to heal all kinds of sicknesses and to drive evil spirits out of those who were possessed by laying on their hands in My name.

[2] After this action, **the captain asked Me:** “Lord and Master, I have seen and observed people on several occasions who behaved and moved very strangely. For some time they were very calm, and when I asked something to them they gave very intelligent answers, and no mental disturbance was apparent. But suddenly they were seized by some invisible power. They twisted their whole being, started to rage and behaved badly by all kinds of awful slandering, even towards people of good reputation and against the gods or about the one God of the Jews and against the prophets, and they hit themselves terribly with their fists. And if one wanted to forcibly chain them, they burst out in a horrible laughing, and the one who touched them fared badly.

[3] In the old mine city of Gadara, not far from here, I have known 2 men against who a whole Roman legion could do little or nothing. They stayed in the old quarry and were a big trouble for the travelers and also for the inhabitants. When they were caught and bound with chains and ropes, it was to no avail, for once they were seized by that secret power, they even tore off the strongest chains and ropes in one moment, hit themselves and also others who dared to approach them, and when they were surrounded by soldiers, these were so much thrown at with stones that they quickly had to flee to avoid of being terribly mutilated. And when sharp arrows were shot at them from a distance, they laughed, for even the most skilled and best trained archers could not shoot one arrow near to them.

[4] I suppose that these men were possessed by very evil demons? Who and what are those demons, and why is it permitted that often the most innocent people, yes now and then even innocent children are tormented by them?"

[5] I said: "About all the things you ask, My disciples and also several of your friends in Rome and also elsewhere are already completely instructed, and at the right time this will also become clear to you. In the mean time let it be sufficient for you to know that now I gave you the power to drive out such evil spirits of men by the might and the power that exists in My name. What you have asked Me now, you first of all will come to know from those whom you will heal, and you can learn many things from My disciples who witnessed that I healed the possessed ones in Gadara."

[6] When the captain heard what I said, he as well as all the others thanked Me for strengthening them, except Judas Iscariot who did not come with us on the hill but was roaming around the city at that time to beg for a so-called tip from all those whom I had healed – an activity that was not new or rare with him, for he was and remained a real thief and was never satisfied. Also no one asked for him, and no one missed him.

### **30. TWO POSSESSED MEN ARE BROUGHT TO THE LORD**



AFTER they all had expressed their thanks for the might and power I had given them, 2 citizens came from the city to us on the hill. One was the known Greek innkeeper and the other, his neighbor, was a Roman. He was a smith and also practiced now and then the healing of sick animals and at times also of sick people, especially half fools and epileptics, and sometimes with good healing results.

[2] Right at that morning 2 young men, between 20 and almost 30 years old, from the nearby city of Abila were brought to the inn of the Greek in order to heal them there by the smith, and according to the smith they had a threefold epileptic disease.

The smith immediately tried his methods, but they did not work, and then the 2 really began to rage, expressed the greatest insults against the smith and also the innkeeper and they threatened to harm all their activities, and their body and possessions.

[3] **Then the innkeeper**, who was terribly frightened, said to the smith: “The great Lord and Master must certainly still be here. He must be filled with all divine power and might, because otherwise He would not have been able yesterday afternoon to completely heal so many people who had diseases that are otherwise incurable. Let us go and find Him. We can ask for Him in the Jewish inn.”

[4] **On this, they went immediately to the Jewish inn, asked for Me, and they were told and indicated where I was. So from there they came hastily to Me and told Me everything that happened to them that morning.**

[5] **And I said to them: “These are not epileptics but these are 2 very severely possessed persons. In the one are 5 evil spirits and in the other, who is the eldest, even 17. Bring them here, then they will be helped here.”**

[6] **The innkeeper said: “O Lord and Master, that will be quite difficult because those 2 are totally uncontrollable and so strong that 20 strong men would not be able to hold them, and they also do not allow anyone to approach them.”**

[7] **I said: “As they were brought to you by their family members from Abila, so they also can be brought here by those same family members. Thus go and bring them here.”**

[8] **At once the innkeeper and the smith went back to the house and told it directly to those who brought the 2 possessed persons from Abila to Pella, and they tried to bring the 2 possessed persons to Me.**

[9] **But at first they did not want, and several well distinguishable voices came out of the mouth of the 2, who spoke thus: “What have we to do with the Son of the supreme God? Must we let us be tormented prematurely by the power of His will and word?”**

[10] **But now the innkeeper said:** “If you absolutely do not want to go, you will be forced by his almightiness, and your resistance will be useless.”

[11] **Then all the evil ones cried out from the 2:** “We surely know that we can never oppose His will, but we nevertheless want to resist it as long as it will be possible!”

[12] **Now the innkeeper said:** “Listen, you evil spirits, who have the insolence to defy the almighty will of the Lord, now the Lord wants it – stand up and go!”

[13] **When the innkeeper had said these words, where I perceptibly supported his will with Mine, the 2 stood up, and at once, without any resistance, they let them be brought to Me by their family members who followed the innkeeper and the smith.**

### 31. PELLAGIUS HEALS A POSSESSED PERSON



**WHEN they came to Me, the innkeeper said:** “Lord and Master from eternity, here are the 2. It was not easy to bring them here. They only could not resist against the power of Your will.”

[2] **I said:** “It is good that they are here, so that you will be able to well know the difference between so-called fools, epileptics and people who are truly possessed by evil spirits.

[3] **These belong however to the already very severely possessed, and men can only free them of the actual Philistine spirits that they possess through praying and much fasting. But here neither praying nor fasting will be necessary.**

[4] **The youngest who is only possessed by 5 spirits can be freed of his spirits by any of you because you are strengthened by Me, but the eldest who is possessed by 17 spirits cannot be freed of his evil indwelling by any of you without My special power of will, because for this purpose, the faith of you all contains still too little true living divine power. This you will only receive when you will be completely permeated by My Spirit – which is**



not the case with you now.

[5] But now I assign you, Pellagius, for the youngest. Lay your hands upon him in My name and say: ‘In the name of Jesus, the Lord, I command that you will all go out of this man, visibly for us, and this in the form that is common to your old, stubborn evilness.’

[6] If you will do that, friend, the 5 demons will immediately go out of this man and leave him forever. So go and do it.”

[7] Then the captain went to the possessed one and did as I had advised to him, and the 5 evil spirits went out of the man in the form of 5 hazy snakes with bat wings and flew for some time around our heads.

[8] And a **voice** was clearly heard by us all that went out of the spirits and sounded like this: “Lord, almighty One, when will the deliverance from our hard captivity dawn?”

[9] **I** said: “When you will change your will. You spirits know the truth, and the light of life is not strange to you. Then why do you still hang on to the old lie and its works of rigid stubbornness for already 1,000 years, according to the time of this Earth? Change your will and beg for forgiveness and mercy to the One who is Lord over everything and will be for eternity from now on, then deliverance will also dawn for you.”

[10] **The spirits** said: “Lord, that is what we want, but You give us another and better will, and show us like that Your forgiveness and mercy. Deliver us from the old evil of the lie and its works, for also we are descendants of Abraham, although we come from Esau.”

[11] **I** said: “It will be given to you as you yourselves want. Go now again to where your love and will attract you.”

[12] **The spirits** said: “Lord, we do not discover in ourselves any love, neither a will. So let happen to us as You want and according to Your mercy, for we are fed up with our will and our love.”

[13] **I** said: “Then ascend to the region of this Earth where purer brothers will guide you further.”

[14] When I had said that, the 5 spirits received human forms, as if formed from light vapor. They grabbed each other and floated then away in the form of an ever more transparent little sheep cloud. Then it quickly disappeared and was no more visible.

[15] **The man** who was freed from his 5 tormenting spirits came to Me and said: “O Lord and Master, I thank You in the first place because You freed me of my great torment, but I also acknowledge as a heathen that from now on I will no more believe in any of our many gods and worship them, for You only are the God of all gods, men and creatures of this Earth, and all demons must bow their knees for Your name! Therefore, all honor, all love and all praise goes eternally only to You!

[16] And what I have said now aloud, I also swear in front of all men and all gods to whom still numberless people adhere and sacrifice, but who are nothing and who have no power or authority.

[17] However, if there still would be some higher god against whom I may have sinned by this open confession, then let him sling a flash of lightning at me from the Heavens and kill me.”

[18] His family members, who were still heathens, were frightened because of the young man’s oath, and they expected that Zeus would be very offended and would certainly destroy the one who was freed by *slinging* a flash of lightning from the Heavens.

[19] But since there was no flash of lightning, **the young man** said to his family: “Why do you expect a punishment from a place from where no punishment should be expected? For there is no Zeus, and even less a flash of lightning in his power or hand, neither did it ever exist.

[20] Look, the One here, before whom I kneel down in gratitude, is the true and almighty Zeus. If He would say that now at once 1,000 times 1,000 flashes of lightning must come down from the clouds or from the cloudless sky to the Earth, then they also would come down and destroy what He has destined to be destroyed.”

[21] **I** said to the freed young man: “Stand up, My son, and remain with your new faith, then you will never more be harmed. But let us also free your brother from his 17 tormenting spirits.”

### 32. THE LORD DRIVES OUT 17 SPIRITS FROM A POSSESSED PERSON



WHEN I had said that, the heathens who were present were seized by fear and great fright, for they already had great respect for the 5 spirits.

[2] **But I** stood quickly up from My place, went to the possessed one and said with My hand held up: “I want it. So go out of the inward parts of this man, visibly before all who are present, for you have no right to possess and to torment him.”

[3] Then they shook the man a few times, so that he fell on the ground, but he quickly stood up again when the evil spirits went out of him in the form of little, black crocodiles.

[4] However, these looked much more compact *and* could not lift themselves into the air but crawled around on the ground. They finally directed their mouth at Me and furiously screeched at Me (**the spirits**): “What have we to do with You? We do not know You and could never go against Your laws on Earth because they never existed. With what right do You want to chastise us now? Why did You chase us out by You superior power of this our habitation that we conquered with difficulty?”

[5] **I** said: “Were you not there when I gave the laws on the Mount Sinai? Who urged you at that time to defy Me, to mock Me, to make a golden calf and then to worship it instead of Me? You were the greatest troublemakers then and convinced many people to turn their back on Me. How then do you say now that I am completely strange and unknown to you and that I never gave you any laws according to which I can now rightly command you?”

[6] That what happened to you at the time when Moses came in

the valley to you, and who in justified zealous anger smashed the stone tables of the law, should also happen to you now. So go away from here, for no salvation will dawn for you for a long time.”

[7] Then they hurriedly crawled away from us along the steep slope of the hill to a swampy cleft that was densely overgrown with all kinds of weeds, and they howled and screeched wildly.

[8] Then **the captain** said to Me: “O Lord and Master, that cleft will be a disaster for all the inhabitants of this place if You will not purify it from those 17 evil demons, for even I became afraid of these truly bestial spirits. So please let them not stay in that cleft.”

[9] **I** said: “Just wait awhile until I am ready with the healed person, then we will see how this cleft can be purified.”

[10] On this, also the second healed person fell on his knees before Me, thanked Me for the healing of his torment that lasted already several years, and he made then the same confession of faith which his brother had done before. Then he asked Me not to forget the request of the captain, for also he could not look anymore into this dirty cleft without disgust.

[11] **I** said: “A little more of the right patience, for we still will see whether 1 of the 17 will come back in another form and dispute with Me. For also these spirits still have a completely free will.”

[12] **The captain** said: “Lord and Master, what is actually the reason that those spirits became visible for us in the form of the very horrible animals that I know? Although the first 5 finally changed their appearance, but those 17 retained their horrible, ugly appearance in which they became visible for us, and they also went away from here in that same appearance. Why do those spirits become visible before men in such form?”

### 33. THE NATURE OF THE 5 SPIRITS THAT WERE CAST OUT FIRST



SAID: “Because that appearance corresponds to their inner evil greedy love. Although the winged snake corresponds to a certain degree of worldly cleverness and can be compared with the subtle stratagem of a commander, but when you look at that cleverness more closely you will find very little neighborly love in it, but instead of that, you will discover extremely great selfishness, imperiousness and unrestrained pride. And look, that inner condition of a soul appears in My supreme light of truth in a form that corresponds to it completely.

[2] Just imagine a winged snake – they still exist in the nature in some places in the middle and the south of Africa and also existed in these parts of the country at the time of the Philistines during very hot years. It is already difficult to fight against a snake without wings – because of its secret cunningness – and for a common man it is still better to run away from it to confront its cunningness.

[3] However, in case of a winged snake, also running away from it does often not help, but only iron clothing and a sharp sword in the hand of a well trained warrior. And that iron clothing is here the power of My love in you. The sharp sword is here My word. And the truth of My word, which can overcome everything, is the well trained warrior and a true hero of all heroes.

[4] From this you can well conclude now why the first 5 spirits had to appear here before Me in the form of winged snakes, for at the time of the war of the Jews and them, they were very cunning commanders, and they had no other goal except their own advantage, gain and fame, because each one of them tried to establish a kingdom for themselves.

[5] Now the man they tormented for a few years is a descendant of their race. They discovered in him a great talent of

commander, still very dormant, and they crept into his inward parts to awaken that talent, even with the hope of bringing him later on the throne of Rome. But they could not succeed in this because in the manner they proceeded with his body they only weakened the capabilities that were dormant in his soul, and did not make them alive.

[6] It was allowed to try out their will on this man to convince themselves that their plan was futile and foolish and could not be executed by their dark cunningness.

[7] But because they recently went too far in their anger with this man, it was also time to set him completely free from them.

[8] All this was foreseen, and it was good for this man, and also for the 5 spirits, because this is how this man could find Me, and with Me he found the eternal life of his soul. And the 5 spirits were at this opportunity healed from their old foolishness, which means their meaningless lust that could never be realized, and they have now taken the way in the schools of humility of the already better spirits. That is now briefly all for what concerns the first 5 spirits.”

### 34. THE BACKGROUND OF THE 17 SPIRITS



HAT concerns the appearance of the 17 spirits: that corresponds to the insatiable greediness of the animals in which form they had to visibly appear here.

[2] When I first dictated the laws for the people of Israel to Moses on the Mount Sinai, with flashes of lightning, thunder, fire and smoke, Moses desired – on My command and referring to My presence – a suitable soberness for the greedy people so that their souls could better accept the truths that were proclaimed to them from the mountain.

[3] But the people asked Moses, and through him also to Me, if they could retreat from the mountain in a faraway valley because of the great fear and fright for the continuous flashes of lightning and thunder and the fire and the smoke. It would stay

there completely sober – and *asking* if Moses with his brother Aaron would only settle the important things with Me.

[4] When a great part of the people asked and insisted, the desire was granted. That great part of the people went immediately with all their belongings to a valley that was quite far away from the mountain. For a few weeks they observed Moses' request quite well, but when Moses stayed away for a longer time the people forgot him and Me, slaughtered calves and sheep and took meal after meal.

[5] Then one of those 17 came forward and tempted the people, because with the help of others he molded a golden calf, asked the people to assemble and said: 'This is our most important food. It is thanks to this that we are alive in this meager desert where our flocks can hardly find enough food. Let us highly honor this valuable symbol and worship it. Prepare now meal after meal and let us be joyful and cheerful around this symbol. Then you must choose us as your commanders, then we will be able to lead you to a fruitful land more quickly than Moses who has completely forgotten us with his ark. In Egypt we learned from the cunning crocodiles what we have to do to catch a good prey. So follow us, then we will not lack abundant meals.'

[6] And look, many let themselves be seduced to do what these greatest troublemakers advised them.

[7] However, when a crowd was dancing around the golden calf I sent Moses to them. Urged by Me, he became inflamed in a justified zealous anger and broke the stone tables of the law. Immediately after that, winged snakes came as if glowing, which was in accordance with the justified zealous anger of Moses, and they bit the renegades, and the one who was bitten, had to die. The first among them were our 17 spirits who wanted to acquire fruitful lands and fat roasted meat with the cunningness and greediness of crocodiles. And for this reason they still had to appear here in the form that corresponds to their character.

[8] This man is not a descendant of the 17, but already since his

childhood he used to eat a lot, and because of that he later became a real glutton. And that bad attitude gave the 17 evil spirits access to enter his inward parts.

[9] But it was to his advantage. Since at first they urged his body to eat even more, his stomach soon lost the ability to consume the food, and the man could then hardly digest anything anymore, so that one was surprised that he could survive with hardly any food. Because of that, he also lost his great gluttony, and by that his soul became more spiritual and stronger in himself. And since his body and still more his soul were restored in the right order, it was the right moment to free him from his tormenting spirits.

[10] At the same time, that twofold possession had still another great advantage, namely for the inhabitants of Abila who lost almost their whole faith, for they were for the greatest part followers of the doctrine of Diogenes – thus stoics in the highest degree – and did not believe in the survival of the human soul after the death of the body.

[11] Well now, the possession of these 2 awakened the belief of many in the survival of the soul after the death of the body, although not completely, but still certainly for half. And now after what the 2 *formerly* possessed ones and their family members have experienced and seen, it will be easy to completely free the inhabitants of Abila from their already deeply rooted stoicism.

[12] And so, for everything in this world that is allowed by Me, there is nothing that is not for the well being of men. And you, My friend, will very well realize that, just like the others who are present.

[13] Since you also know now the situation of the 17 spirits, we will now wait and see whether not one of them will return.”



### 35. THE LORD ADMONISHES THE LEADER OF THE SPIRITS THAT WERE CAST OUT



WHEN I had finished that rather long all-explaining speech in relation to possession, for which they all fervently thanked Me, suddenly a black smoke arose from the already known cleft – as it often arises from the chimney of a potter – crawling toward us, and soon it was very near to us.

[2] When it was 10 paces away from us, I said very loudly: “Unto there and not further! Unveil yourself and show yourself in your form!”

[3] Then a very rough form of a man appeared out of the black smoke, visible for all those who were present. The form was as brown-black as that of a Moor and carried a golden calf on his arm as if he wanted to show by that that it was still his god and his love.

[4] However, with a loud cracking I let a terrible flash of lightning descend from the sky in the form of a winged snake. It hit the golden calf and destroyed it in an instant.

[5] Then **the form** began to stir and twist, and finally it brought out the following words: “Lord, why do You not let us enjoy unhindered what our love wants? For we never asked You to create us and then to torment us at Your pleasing for thousands of years and whole eternities long. But now that You have created us, which we did not want, and also breathed into us a love and a free will, why do You punish us if we act according to our love and our will?”

[6] I said again with a very loud voice: “Who in the whole eternal infinity can prescribe Me, the only Lord, full of all power and might, what I have to do!? Only My eternal love prescribes Me what should happen, and My eternal and endless wisdom is the collaborator of the almightiness of My will and brings it to order!

[7] Through My righteous helper Moses I set you free from the

hard slavery of Egypt when you had to kill your firstborns! I gave you food in the desert, and no one suffered hunger or thirst, except some of you who in the land of abominations indulged too much in gluttony which is very destructive to human souls! I advised them to be sober, for the salvation of their body and especially for the salvation of their soul!

[8] Why did you desire to separate yourselves from Me when on the Mountain of knowledge I wanted to change you to become My children!?! Because you did not dare to guzzle in My light! Then you went away to guzzle, and to worship – instead of Me as Father – a dead golden calf that was made by your hands!

[9] Who actually breathed that urge in your love!?! I certainly not, but you yourselves, by your free will, without which you would be animals and would never be able to develop yourselves to become My children!

[10] But since you turned away from Me by your free will, then why do you not again raise yourselves against Me by your will that is *still* free!?

[11] You think that I torment you!?! O, absolutely not! Every devil torments himself by his wrongness and stubbornness when he resists against My wise order and thinks that he can change it according to his malicious love!

[12] I remain the forever one and the same unchangeable Lord over the whole sensorial and spiritual world! With the pure love for Me, and from that for his fellowman, every man and every spirit can achieve everything with Me and receive everything from Me, but with a kind of violence or pride, eternally nothing, for I am the most violent among all the violent and the mightiest of all the mighty!

[13] But I am also the meekest of all the meek ones, the best of all the good ones and the most merciful of all those who are merciful. The one who will come to Me in true, remorseful love, asking Me for mercy, I will not withhold it from him. But the one who will revolt against Me after he came to know Me, will eternally not find salvation, but will only throw himself into an


ever greater misery!

[14] Let every evil spirit and every devil remember that! I am the Lord, and besides Me there is not another one! And now go away from here!”

[15] When I had said that, the spirit left immediately, and soon after that, one could see 17 dark hazy clouds ascending from the cleft and were driven by the wind to the north.

[16] I said to the captain: “Look, now also the wish of you all has been fulfilled, because those 17 dark bundles of hazy clouds were the 17 evil spirits. The one who was here told the other 16 what he had heard here, and then they decided to leave these regions forever and to decide with each other in the wild north what they will do. For in these regions they would be too much irritated by a certain corresponding influence by the things of this world, and would not be able to turn into themselves, contemplate themselves and see their sinful ugliness. So these 17 spirits will still improve, but before that time will come, a lot of summers will still have to push away the winters on this Earth.”

### 36. THE DANGERS OF EATING IMPURE FOOD

 HE captain said: “O Lord and Master, do tell us also where such spirits are mostly staying on Earth, so that we more easily can avoid these ominous places and regions. For if one comes in such regions, and he has something in common with such evil spirit it could easily happen that he is seized by him and finally even taken into possession and be harmed, which is truly not desirable.”

[2] I said: “Friend, the one who actively believes in Me and loves Me by doing the works that My love in him is showing him, should not be afraid of that. But men who are still greatly adhered to all kinds of pagan superstition should fear such spirits everywhere and at all times, and they are also already more or less surrounded by them or even possessed *by them*, for

all impure passions of men are stimulated and influenced by spirits who were formerly, during their whole life, controlled by the same impure passions and who surrendered to these with lust and greed.

[3] Such impure spirits – partly spirits who already lived in this world, but mostly nature spirits who were never begotten in a human body to live in – are everywhere: in the air, on and in the Earth, in the water and in the fire, in stones, metals, plants, animals and also in the blood and flesh of men. That is why people should not eat the flesh of suffocated or impure animals.

[4] Although, in case of need, the flesh of impure animals can also be eaten, but it first has to be well cleaned, marinated with salt and good herbs, dried by the fire and then smoked with good herbs, in order to free it from the impure spirits.

[5] The flesh of animals of prey is harmful to human beings, even with all the precaution measures that I advised you, because the impure spirits can never be completely removed from them.

[6] So also, men should not drink water from impure springs, and they should keep their wells clean, as Moses strictly commanded the Israelites in My name.

[7] The one who – as far as his body is concerned – will live according to the instructions of Moses will always and everywhere be spared of being possessed by evil and impure spirits. And this all the more sure if he actively believes in Me and My fatherly care, and who will start, do and end everything in My name. But without that, he is at each moment exposed to a thousand dangers of all kinds, unfortunately as a result of his own laziness, ignorance and foolishness.

[8] If I would not protect, by My angels, those who already from nature have a better attitude and will, there would be only few people on this Earth who would not be possessed. But men should not rely too much on that because My angels do not restrain the will of men. This is also for you something to think about.”

[9] When I had finished that, they all thanked Me and praised My wisdom and power. And the inhabitants of Abila asked Me if I also would like to visit their city, for they would announce Me there.

[10] I said: “You still can do that but I do not say precisely the time and the hour when I will come to you. But I also will come to you. Now you can go back home. But first take some bread and wine with your innkeeper. And eat only the flesh of pigs after you have prepared it as I advised you.”


[11] Then they all thanked Me once more and went then to the city with the Greek innkeeper and the smith.

[12] We still stayed on the hill for some time, and the captain and also the other Romans asked Me many more things, and I removed their doubts.

[13] So it became fully noon, and a messenger from our innkeeper, who stayed with us, came on the hill to invite us for the midday meal. And we stood up and followed the messenger.

## THE LORD IN ABILA

### 37. THE TRIP TO ABILA

HEN we came to our innkeeper, a great number of people stood before the entrance of the house. They once more wanted to see Me and speak to Me since they themselves were witnesses of My deeds and also heard already a few things about My teaching.

[2] But I sent them to our captain Pellagius and told them that they would receive My complete teaching from him.

[3] The captain promised them that he would instruct them in everything.

[4] The people were satisfied with that and they slowly dispersed. We entered the house where the midday meal stood already on the table. We partook of the meal and were meanwhile full of good memories.

[5] When we soon finished the meal, and I had announced to all those who were present that in 1 hour I would depart with My disciples to Abila, the captain asked Me if he, together with his subofficers and Veronica, could escort Me to that city and also to the other places and cities that were under his command.

[6] I allowed him, about which he was very glad, and he immediately took preparations for the departure.

[7] We left the house of the innkeeper 1 hour later and he also escorted Me a long way outside of the city, together with his healed son, the Greek innkeeper, the known smith and the veterinarian.

[8] When I had taken leave of the 4 outside of the city, I also gave the power to the smith to cast out evil spirits with men, for which he could not stop glorifying and praising Me.

[9] Then with a rather fast pace we traveled over a good main road to Abila. And 1 hour before sunset we reached that city which was not so small.

[10] That city also was mostly inhabited by gentiles. Only 10

Jewish families lived in that city and were poorly accommodated, and they had to serve the gentiles and live from them. All 10 families had only 1 ancient and deteriorated house to live in. Therefore, in that city they did not have their own inn and no synagogue.

[11] When we came near the city I said to the captain: “Now go with your companions before us into the city, and let the 10 Jewish families know that I will come to them and will stay overnight with them. All the rest will become clear later on by itself.”

[12] When the captain heard what I said, he walked immediately with his followers before us, went directly to the Jews and told them what they could expect.

[13] However, **the very poor Jews** said to the captain: “O high ruler in the name of the emperor, that would be all good and fine but where can those more than 40 people find a suitable accommodation in this deteriorated house? There are enough deteriorated rooms but who wants to live there? There are more than enough frogs, vipers, salamanders and scorpions, but one cannot accommodate people there. What concerns our own rooms, we hardly have enough room for ourselves to live in, especially at night, and it would be difficult to give in addition to us a decent accommodation to a few people more. And we cannot take care of them at all since we ourselves are extremely poor.

[14] And so try to dissuade that great Lord and Master – about whose miraculous deeds we have already heard – from finding and taking accommodation with us for the night, for there are several well equipped inns in this city.”

[15] **Then the captain said:** “I will tell Him your need, of which I surely know, but I also know beforehand that I will not be able to dissuade Him, because once He has decided and said something, happens. He already will know your awkward situation and your need for a long time, and He most certainly comes to you to help you and to bring true consolation, but not

to torment you or to burden you with great worries. So kindly meet His will, then you will find great love and mercy with Him.”

[16] **The oldest one of the house said:** “Yes, yes, let Him come as He pleases. When He is here, it will be obvious to Him at once what our situation is. We are all truly glad that He wants to come to us, but we are sad because for such mercy we cannot offer anything in return.”

[17] **While the captain was still talking with the eldest, I already came with the disciples before the Jewish house, which was an old cracked castle and was located on a height outside the city wall.**

[18] **The captain saw Me at once. He quickly came to Me and wanted to explain the situation of the Jewish house and its inhabitants.**

[19] **But I said to him: “Friend, spare your words, since I know everything for already a long time. But indeed – as you already indicated to these people – I precisely came to them because I very well know the situation of their house and themselves. So let us go immediately to the eldest.”**

### **38. THE LORD IN THE HOUSE OF THE 10 JEWISH FAMILIES**



**SCORTED** by the captain, I went to the eldest of the house, and there where also a few heads of family present who were worried and who looked at us to see what we would do after seeing that the house was an old ruin.

[2] **When I came to the eldest, he said:** “You are welcome with us, Lord and Master, but what we can do in return for the great mercy that You are showing us will certainly not be welcome to You. Look at our house. And our clothes will clearly let You see our situation without having to say anything further about it.”

[3] **I said:** “Peace be with you. I know what your situation is, but your misery is for the greatest part your own fault, for by



laziness and by having almost no more trust in God, the only Lord and Giver of all good gifts, no one will make much progress on Earth.

[4] When you still had the means and the strength, you did nothing to improve your old house. You also did not bother about Jehovah and became acquainted with the blind teaching of the Greek sages by which you became much more miserable than you ever were before.

[5] Now you became even slaves of the gentiles, and you rather must beg them for a little bread in return of hard work instead of being able to say to them: ‘We have deserved it in the sweat of our face.’ For it is difficult to serve those who do not believe in any God nor in the survival of the soul after the dead of the body, and thus they also do not believe in a reward in the great world of the beyond, and so they also do not have neighborly love, and they are even enemies of their own life.

[6] Now in your greatest need you remembered the ancient Jehovah and begged Him for help, and that made Me come to you to help you, in front of the many very blind gentiles who also gave up the belief in their gods for the sake of their Diogenes. I am doing this so that they also will see that the ancient God is still alive and that He helps the one who believes in Him, who keeps His commandments, and expects, in a truthful and unshakable trust, the right help from Him.

[7] Let Me see your old, very crumbling house, then we will see if we can stay overnight here and if what is damaged can be repaired. After that we will examine your provision rooms to see how much provision there still is.”

[8] **The eldest said:** “O great Lord and Master. This house must have had many big and smaller rooms before, but we hardly were able to use 7 of them, and even these are already heavily damaged. All the others are still full of all kinds of vermin and are mostly not even accessible anymore for humans. Also our provision rooms are for the moment in a very miserable state. Only one can still be used for half, but even that one is empty,

except for a few moldy breadcrumbs. But let us follow Your will and still go and see, so that You, o great Lord and Master, can see with Your own eyes that this is our situation in the land of Gad and Ruben, whose descendants we are.”

[9] Then we walked through all the rooms of the big house, and it all looked like the elder had described.

[10] However, when we were in the outer and last room, I said: “Now you will come to know God’s power in Me, who am also a Son of man as far as My body is concerned. Look, we penetrated through debris of walls, pieces of pillars, thorny shrubs and all kinds of vermin up to this room. And now we will walk back through royally adorned, beautiful rooms that are provided with everything and in which one can well spend the night. I want it, and so be it.”

[11] I hardly had said that when the whole house was already completely changed, and when we then walked through all the rooms and chambers, nowhere any damage could be discovered.

[12] **The Jews** of that house slapped their hands above their head and cried out in great joyful amazement: “That can only be done by the One who created Heaven and Earth! Therefore, all glory to You, o great God who gave such power to a human being!”

[13] Then we visited the provision rooms that were also filled with everything men need to alleviate their hunger and thirst. Then the amazement was even greater, and from sheer astonishment they could not speak for a long time.

### 39. THE TESTIMONY OF THE ELDEST ABOUT THE LORD



AFTER a while, **the eldest** spoke the following words: “No, no, no, this is unheard-of! Moses and Elijah, the 2 greatest prophets, did great things, yes, greater than a human being with the most pure reason is ever capable to grasp and understand and which even the most believing mind could hardly believe. But what are all those wonders that were done by

the 2 named prophets according to the will of Jehovah – by whose Spirit of power they were filled – compared to this miraculous work? All the prophets, the big ones as well as the small ones, have said: ‘The Lord wants it, and the Lord speaks.’ But You, o great Lord, said: ‘I want it, and it will be’. And in one moment happened what You wanted. That is why You are more than Moses and Elijah.

[2] Your ‘I’ is the Lord Himself in its fullness, and now I as a gray man have seen my salvation in You, and I would like to say now: ‘O Lord, Lord, let Your old servant pass over into the great world of the beyond in peace. For You are the promised One out of Yourself. Your eternal Spirit has spoken from the mouth of the prophets and predicted Your descend, and You, who are the eternal Truth and Faithfulness Yourself, have kept Your word and came in a body of flesh and blood to us sinful men to lift us up again, Jews as well as gentiles, who are also children of Noah and who also once formed one people with the pre-Abramites under the great Supreme King and High Priest Melchisedech of Salem. Therefore, all honor and all glory goes to You, o Lord, Lord, Lord.”

[3] I said: “Well now, this is good and truly so. That your sunken faith has been lifted up again in one moment by this deed of Mine, is surely very understandable, as well as the fact that you immediately recognized Me, but in the future you first should make your faith alive by the works of true neighborly love. Otherwise, in My eyes, it will be worthless for the life of your soul. For I only came to you people because of My extremely great love for you, and so you people can only come to Me again – and in this way to the eternal life of your souls as My real children – through the love for Me and your fellowman. That you should remember well.

[4] It is true that the faith in Me is a living light from the Heavens, but only through the works of love. Just as a light that shines in the night will extinguish if it is not continuously fed by oil, so also will the initial most unbendable faith extinguish

without the continuous works of love.

[5] Through this miracle, that was easy for Me to do, I not only lifted up your completely lost faith in your soul, but I also stirred up your love for Me. And in the light of that true, eternal flame of life you then quickly and easily saw who the One in Me was who came to you.

[6] And now that you immediately and without much difficulty and preaching have seen this, you also should act according to it, so that you and your descendants will stay in the living faith by the works of love in My name.”

[7] **The eldest said:** “O Lord, Lord, this work will make a big sensation in this region of the 60 cities, with the few Jews as well as with the many gentiles, and also in this city as well as later on in the other cities. If the people will come from all sides to this place and will see that our house that was crumbled for already so long was suddenly changed in a real royal castle, and will ask us how that happened, then what answer should we give them?”

[8] **I said:** “Do not worry about that, for when you will have to give an answer to the people about this deed and talk about Me, it will be laid in your mouth what you should say. You can send the very intrusive crowd to the captain and his subordinates, who saw it all happen, then they will receive the right explanation, for these men know Me already very well and know that nothing is impossible for Me.”

#### **40. THE SPIRITUAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THE RENOVATION OF THE CRUMBLED CASTLE**



**B**UT so that you also will know why I have now raised up this old crumbled castle again, where in former times kings have lived, and *why I* have as if completely constructed it anew, pay attention to what I still will say to you:

[2] In the first place, the new construction of this old castle of kings corresponds to the fact that I have made the completely

crumbled faith in the one, only true God everywhere alive again.

[3] Although there are still a few weathered, broken and crumbled pieces of faith left of the old castle of faith, but they do not suit anymore as the life's house of My love and mercy for the souls of My children as they were at the time of the King of Salem. They only suit a house for those whose mind entirely looks like the vermin that continuously inhabited this castle for a long time and in many forms.

[4] So the castle was a true image of the condition of the faith in God and in keeping His laws, and this in and around Jerusalem.

[5] Without a complete improvement and turning back to Me, I will visit that city and everyone who is on its side, even more terribly than when I visited Sodom and Gomorrah at the time of Lot. And with this I especially point out to you the second reason why I have raised up this castle now and constructed it completely anew and have provided it with everything.

[6] When My judgment will come over the godless ones in Jerusalem and the whole environment, and My few faithful ones will flee, they also will come to this place. Then accept them, and make thus the faith, which has been newly raised up now in you, completely alive by the works of love in My name.

[7] Although you, old people of this place, will not physically experience the judgment *that will come* over the city Jerusalem *and* that will be allowed, but the young ones among you and their children will experience it. And when it will happen, then think about what I have told you now."

[8] Now **the eldest** said with deep respect to Me: "O Lord, Lord, great and extremely glorious is Your name. A few months ago we saw at night a very strange phenomenon of light at the firmament of which the images filled us with great fear and fright. At first there were big pillars of fire that apparently reached to the stars. The pillars came miraculously together and ascended, and because we did not see anything of it anymore, we thought that it was a very rare phenomenon of fire but still of a natural kind. But soon after that, the whole sky was glowing.

We saw the city of Salomon and great warlords that besieged that city and they finally devastated it completely together with the temple.

[9] Later, already more towards the morning, there was again a phenomenon of light completely in the west. No one of us could decipher what that meant. But the middle phenomenon was very similar with what You, o Lord, Lord, have announced to us now about Jerusalem. It certainly must be related to the prediction that You have made now?”

[10] **I said:** “That is right, My friend, but we will not further talk about this now. Instead of that, prepare an evening meal. I already took care of all the rest.”

[11] **The eldest said to Me:** “Lord, Lord, maybe our earthly commander, the wise captain, could give us someone who knows the art of cooking, for we did not cook anything for already many years. We do not have a fire, and in this environment there is also no firewood for the fireplace. That is why it is threefold almost impossible to prepare an evening meal for You and for those who are with You, even though all the big and small provision rooms were greatly filled with all kinds of supplies by Your mercy. Firewood and fire were probably also provided by Your mercy, but to what use if no one of us can cook and prepare food?”

[12] **I said:** “Old man, I like your honesty, because for what concerns your art of cooking you have spoken the full truth. But the captain has already given his daughter and 2 of his subordinates the instruction to prepare for us and for you all a good evening meal in the big kitchen where there is also a fish tank that is now full of fish.”

## 41. THE CASTLE OF MELCHISEDECH

**B**UT there is also a big cemented cellar, made of basalt stones in this castle. Did you never discover or see it?"

[2] **The eldest and 2 of his nephews** who were almost as old as him, said: "Yes, there once must have existed a cellar full of the best wine, and also other treasures must be hidden in it, but no one of us has ever dared to go into the subterranean spaces and investigate amidst all kinds of malicious vermin and other evil powers. And thus no one of use knows the real, exact entrance to the mentioned cellar. Where and how can we enter it? *I suppose that* by Your power, also that, just like all the rest, will be in excellent condition now?"

[3] **I** said: "If you believe that, sure. But since no one of you knows its entrance, follow Me and I will bring you to the cellar."

[4] Then the eldest and 10 of his family members followed Me with one of the many torches of wax that we took from the kitchen, and we also lighted it there. A gallery led from the mentioned big kitchen to a big door that was made of a plate of basalt. I showed them how the door could be easily opened, and I Myself opened the big and heavy gate. When the gate was open, large stairs became visible at once, along which we could easily come into the very spacious, big cellar.

[5] When we were in the cellar, about which those poor Jews were again extremely amazed, we found a large quantity of big and small containers of stone and also a still larger quantity of drinking utensils made of stone, ceramic, silver and also gold, about which the poor Jews were of course extremely surprised and they did not know whether also these things were created by Me in a miraculous manner or if they still dated from primordial times, which could be suspected from their appearance.

[6] And **I** said to them: "All the things that we have found here come from the time of the great King and High Priest of Salem. This was on Earth His castle, which – just like the mountains

with their many extraordinary caves and holes – was not built by human hands, but by that same power by which it is now constructed again, for only I am the true King of Salem and High Priest Melchisedech from eternity.

[7] But take now the carafes and fill them with wine of which you have here a very big quantity in the big containers.”

[8] Now the poor Jews were very joyful and took the drinking utensils, but they did not know how to take out the wine from the big containers of stone that were completely hermetically closed with heavy plates of smooth stone.

[9] Then I showed them at the bottom of the containers a somewhat protruding opening that was closed up with a plug. They pulled the plug with ease out of the opening and at once, an old, excellent wine flowed out into the drinking utensil that was held under, and its very strong smell indicated immediately to all those who were present – also to the captain and one of his subordinates – that this was an old, excellent wine.


[10] When all the drinking utensils were filled, and one after the other was carried in the big dining hall *and put* on the table, and those who served the wine were with us again while we stayed behind in the cellar, I said to the eldest: “Look, although this wine was also pressed from grapes that were grown in this land, but it is almost as old as this castle. This is a wine of tithes that was brought as an offering by all the kings over whom the King of Salem ruled, and it had to be saved until now, so that I, as completely the same King, and those who believe in Me and follow Me, would drink now from that old wine of tithes.

[11] As long as this castle will exist in My name, also this wine will not exhaust. Nevertheless, 300 years after My ascension, this castle and a big part of this city will be so much destroyed by the power of our adversaries that one will no more recognize the place were it is standing now. But that is not important, for I am building now a new castle for Myself in the hearts, and once that it will be strongly established it will never more be destroyed.



[12] So all these old memorials will then also completely disappear, so that men would not commit idolatry with them. But until almost 300 years after My ascension this castle will still be standing, and this wine will not exhaust. And all this will serve as accommodation for those who will flee from Jerusalem, and it will strengthen them.”

## 42. FROM THE TIME OF THE KING OF SALEM

OW the eldest asked with full respect: “Lord, Lord, if one reads it like this, that mysterious King of Salem was already there soon after Noah stepped out of the ark and began to cultivate the soil. His children could not have multiplied so quickly in such a short time so that at the time of the King of Salem large numbers of other smaller kings were already on Earth who brought Him the tithes as an offering? Like many other things in our books, this sounds very mysterious and cannot be understood by our mind.

[2] And You also said that You would ascend. What is that? To where will You ascend, and when? Lord, Lord, explain this some more, so that finally we also will be able to explain it in Your spirit of truth, love and life to our descendants, so that they will believe us when we tell them that You Yourself, o Lord, Lord, were the one who revealed such strange things to us.”

[3] I said: “What concerns the time of the King of Salem: He was there already since eternity, before any created being, and thus also before Noah. But what concerns the earthly time in which He Himself, in the form and personality of an angel from the Heavens, taught men about Himself and about their destiny, He was there from time to time during the life of Noah and talked with him, but the system of an actual king and high priest was only established a couple of hundred earthly years after Noah left the ark, and Noah himself and his 3 sons experienced that time. At that time the Earth was again densely populated, and the many progenitors of small nations induced the name

king, brought every year their offering to Salem and were taught by the King.

[4] When the people spread themselves more and more over the wide Earth, they forgot the King of kings and separated themselves from Him. Also those who lived close to Him did not go to Salem anymore. Then the King left the castle also and visited only seldom a few patriarch who remained faithful to Him, like for instance Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and later all the great and small prophets and now in flesh and blood also you.

[5] What concerns My ascending, it has a double meaning. The first will, counted from now on, take place in less than a year. The second however, will be accomplished in every person who truly believes in Me, because the spirit of My love will ascend in his heart and will guide the mind of that person into all the wisdom of the Heavens.

[6] However, My personal ascending will take place shortly after this body of Mine will arise from the grave, and will in this way pass into My divine Being, 3 days after it will be killed by the hands of God's enemies.

[7] As you have heard that Elijah formerly ascended visibly and as in a burning chariot to the sky, so I also will visibly before many of My friends, ascend from the material ground of this Earth to the visible sky. And from then on I will not walk around like now personally visible among all people – good ones and evil ones – and teach them, but I will only in the spirit, very perceptibly, and repeatedly also visibly, walk among, and teach and guide those who believe in Me and who love Me above all and their fellowman as themselves. For in the heart of these people I will build for Myself the mentioned new castle and will take up My residence in it.”

### 43. THE EVENING MEAL IN THE OLD DINING HALL

**T**HOSE with whom I will live will then also perceive Me, and I will teach and guide them Myself. And so the ones who really love Me will always be taught and guided by Me, and they will have eternal life in themselves. But the heart-castles of those who separate themselves from Me, like in the old time when the kings separated themselves from the King of Salem only out of love for the world, and did no more give Him what they had to give Him, will also be left by Me. And as it was in the time of the King of Salem, when He left this castle together with all the angels who served Him, and when as a result of that there were all too soon all kinds of conflicts, envy, jealousy, and because of that also wars among the nations and their kings, so it will also be in the future among those whose heart-castles I will leave. Then one nation will rise against another and try to subdue it.

[2] Therefore, the one who will stay in My teaching and love, in him I will stay also. And truly: out of his loins will flow living water, and the one who will drink of that water will no more thirst in eternity.

[3] My teaching and its divine wisdom in it is the true, living water. The one who will drink of it, his soul will soon be filled with all wisdom and he will be satiated forever. And then he will nevermore thirst or hunger for a higher truth or wisdom.

[4] And so, now I have explained to you, My old Jew, what before still seemed dark and incomprehensible to you. But do not think that you are already now introduced into all truth and wisdom. That you will receive when I will have risen in the spirit of all truth and wisdom also in your heart and will then have ascended to the Heaven of life of your soul.

[5] And let us now leave this cellar and go to the dining hall, because the evening meal is already prepared, and we will partake of it and strengthen our limbs with it.”

[6] After these words of Mine we left the cellar and we soon

came in the big dining hall that was brightly illuminated with 100 lamps, while only a while ago it was still such a ruin that no one could have noticed that ever a big dining hall had existed there.

[7] 2 big tables of stone resting on strong pillars were set up in the hall in the right manner and beautifully covered with the finest byssus<sup>1</sup>. Around each of the 2 tables a right number of comfortable chairs were put down, and both tables were well provided with tastefully prepared fishes, bread and wine.

[8] So we sat at the tables that were set for us, and the owners and inhabitants of this castle sat at the second table that was ordered for them, and we all ate and drank in moderation.

[9] Many things were discussed during the dinner, and the captain asked Me how he should handle the situation with the Romans and the Greeks the next day when they would all too soon discover this miracle. Because then they would ask so many questions as was never seen before.

[10] I said: “When someone will come, then tell him the truth. But tell him also that he should keep all this to himself and should not run to the nearby cities and places to make Me known prematurely.

[11] In order that this miracle would not be so quickly visible from the outside, this castle did not change very much exteriorly, but only interiorly. And so also you should not make a big sensation of My deed. I Myself will visit some of the better gentiles tomorrow, and 1 hour after midday I will go from here to Golan with My disciples, whereto you also can accompany Me.

[12] When you will come back here at a specific time, you can make My Word known to these gentiles, and then this miracle that was done by Me can serve for you as proof, so that they would recognize the One who has done this and then live and act according to His will.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Fine linen cloth of ancient times.

[13] When the captain heard this from Me, he promised that he would in every respect strictly behave according to My will.

#### 44. THE NOISE BEFORE THE HOUSE OF THE JEWS



WHILE we were all sitting at the table, there was a noise outside in the street. Several workers returned home from their daily work, saw the house well illuminated – which was otherwise with these poor Jews almost never the case – and wanted to see what had happened in that ruin. So they called the Jews, whom they knew, that they should come out to tell them what had happened, because the rooms that were in a bad shape were brightly and festively illuminated.

[2] But I said to the captain: “You go outside now to the noise makers. They will recognize you immediately and realize at once why the house is now so illuminated. Then they will immediately behave quietly, go home and not ask anymore why this house of the Jews is now so illuminated.”

[3] This is what the captain did, escorted by one of his subordinates.

[4] When he came to the noise makers, he said very loud and in full seriousness (**the captain**): “What do you want from the poor Jews while I and a still much greater Ruler are busy with them? Should I perhaps not let the house inside be illuminated for me at this hour of the night for your sake?”

[5] When the workers heard this from the captain, whom they recognized immediately, they apologized that they did not know, asked to forgive them and went then very quietly home. But they told their family immediately what they had seen and heard, and on this, they thought about many things and asked to and fro and guessed what it could mean that the captain with a still much greater ruler had taken residence in the miserable house of the Jews. But no one dared to go out of the city to the house of the Jews and see what was happening there, and so we had our rest throughout the whole night.

[6] When the captain with his subordinate came back to us, he related how he had done it, and that it worked well. Only, he was afraid that he would be run over early in the morning by the very complaining Greeks, and he wished that it could be prevented as much as possible.

[7] I said: “Do not worry about that. Also tomorrow we will find a way to keep the nosy ones far away from the house. But since it is now already quite late at night, we will go to rest. I will stay here and rest at the table. However, let the one who wants a bed go to the many bedrooms. There he will find a great number of resting beds.”

[8] All those who sat at My table preferred to stay just like Me at the table until the morning. Only the Jews did not stay at their table but went to their old rooms that were now however also completely changed. We let the lamps burn throughout the whole night to illuminate the rooms, so that a few nosy ones who still dared to go very quietly at night to the house of the Jews to listen at some distance what was happening in the house, would be scared. And when they saw the lights, they did not dare to come near to the house from fear to be discovered by the captain or even by one of his subordinates and then be punished.

## 45. THE TRUE CELEBRATION OF THE SABBATH



So we all rested undisturbed until the morning of a Sabbath, which was however not especially important to these Jews, for they were more inclined to be a gentile than a Jew. Nevertheless, the eldest came already early in the morning asking for Me, to know if I and My disciples were strictly keeping the Sabbath, since it was appointed by Moses as a day of the Lord that had to be strictly hallowed.

[2] I said: “To hallow the Sabbath according to the precepts of Moses is right and good for every Jew, but from now on every day is a day of the Lord, and the one who does good deeds for

his fellowman according to My teaching hollows truly the Sabbath. So you do not have to behave differently today, now that it is Sabbath, than on any other day.

[3] Man has the same needs for his body on a Sabbath than on any other day and has to fulfill them as possible. He only should refrain from heavy servile work in exchange of a salary. However, if he can by that do anything useful for one or more of his fellowmen, the Sabbath will not be desecrated by that, even if he takes on no matter what heavy servile work, and I will bless him for that. But if such opportunity does not come up, it is good to rest on a Sabbath and to occupy ones mind with the things of the spirit. For with the heavy work of a working day, the soul is not well capable to think deeply in himself about spiritual things and to raise himself to God. And for this reason, Moses had ordained the Sabbath.

[4] But that it is not allowed to eat or to drink on a Sabbath after sunset and also before sunrise, and that he also may not do good physical deeds for his fellowman, like the Pharisees are teaching in Jerusalem and also in other places in the synagogues, that is nonsense which indicates that the teachers themselves never understood or observed the teaching of Moses. And by teaching such things, they have totally distorted the spirit of the teaching of Moses and the prophets for the Jews. So you can do today as you have done *before*, then you will not violate the Sabbath for Me.

[5] You only should not perform the lowest job for a meager salary for the gentiles, not today, or on any other day. But if they also will accept My teaching and will consider and treat you also as their fellowmen, you can perform for them also, in all love and brotherly friendship, all kinds of good services, so that there will be peace and unity among you. With this, you know now everything what concerns the true sanctification of the Sabbath.

[6] Even the wisest gentiles say that it is better to serve a fellowman – when the conditions ask for it – than to go to the temple and serve a god there who does not need the service of

men for Himself. And so, the only true God never needs the service of men for Himself. But what He needs is that, out of love for Him, and from that same love, men would perform good deeds among each other.

[7] For love is the true fertilizer for the soul for eternal life, and God created humankind for the purpose that they should develop into eternal life. True religion, the only one pleasing to Me, consists thus mainly that people should serve one another mutually in My love. And if this is the religion that is most pleasing to Me, then the Sabbath will never be violated by that.

[8] For it was written by a prophet in the time that the Jews were adhering too much to the outer ceremony – like the Pharisees are doing now: ‘Look, this people honors Me with the lips, but their heart is far away from Me.’

[9] Thus, from now on, serve Me only in your heart and abandon the dead ceremony, then you will sanctify the Sabbath every day in a manner that is most pleasing to Me. Did you understand this now?”

[10] **The Jew** said: “Yes, o Lord, Lord, and that is why we will sanctify the Sabbath according to Your meaning.”

[11] Then the old man went at once to his family and explained to them how I wanted to have the Sabbath sanctified, with which they all completely agreed. Then they soon began to prepare the morning meal at which Veronica was again very helpful to them.

#### 46. THE QUESTION HOW TO TEACH THE SUPERSTITIOUS GENTILES



AND we went outside this castle to a hill that was still higher than the one on which the castle was standing and from where we had a beautiful view in all directions. From there we could also see a large part of the valley of the Jordan, and on the other side to the east in the faraway plains of the Euphrates a large number of mountains



and surrounding places. From here one could see as far as Jerusalem, but this time this region was completely covered in a thick morning haze so that one could not distinguish any of the Judean places.

[2] **The captain made the remark:** “Lord and Master, it seems to me that the thick haze above the places and fields of Judea are characterizing that people, whose heart and mind are surrounded by a still thicker haze than the one that is now hiding their fields from our eyes?”

[3] **I said:** “Yes, friend, so it is. That is why also many find death in the very dense haze of their errors and all kinds of sin that result from it. But let us put such reflections aside now and direct our eyes to the rising of the sun, for we will see again a beautiful sunrise today. Therefore, we will all rest for a while now and enjoy the sunrise.”

[4] Then they all kept quiet and enjoyed the beautiful, continuously changing scenes of the morning, for the morning was in this region always more beautiful because of the distant horizon in the east. Usually before sunrise a lot of rare meteors were formed there. Its reason in natural respect was the extensive volcanic soil. The superstitious gentiles and the people of those regions thought that such phenomena were the demigod companions of the goddess Aurora who always cleared the way for Apollo.

[5] Now it was the moment to take away that foolish belief from the gentiles and to show them the true cause of such phenomena and explain it to them understandably. That is what I did here with the captain and his subordinates, and they also began to understand why I actually took them early in the morning on this hill.

[6] When they were instructed in everything, and also had thanked Me very much for this, **a first subordinate of the captain made the remark:** “It finally will be very difficult for especially the common people to dissuade them from their superstition, for according to the teaching of the pagan priests

they only see all kinds of spirits and gnomes in every cloud and every hazy form, in the ascending of the smoke from the kitchen, in the burning and more or less crackling of the wood, and they expect, depending on their movement, happiness or misfortune.

[7] For finally, with all those many phenomena that are often very rare, there is something spiritual about it, for no phenomenon can come to an outer visible existence without a deep inner and thus first cause of existence. And to make this most important cause understandable and illustrative for the people, the old sages personified it in a corresponding image. But that image is now of course only understood by very few people, and instead of that, they keep the phenomenon itself for the most inner and first cause of existence. So it is difficult to make such people understand in a convincing way, that what they see is not what they see or for what they are taken it, but – in this or that manner – a necessary outer form of appearance of a most inner, first and for the physical eye never visible cause.

[8] But now there is still another question that comes up, and that is: whether is finally not better for such people not to take away their superstition in one time? For although in this way they will lose what they had, but as to what they receive instead they cannot so easily make it their own with a full, convincing clearness. And because of that they can all too easily turn to materialism, as this has been already the case with so many Greeks and Romans, which is very dense and extremely difficult to wipe out and which the inhabitants of this city truly do not lack. Lord and Master, what do You say about this?"

## 47. THE ART OF TEACHING



SAID: “I can say nothing differently than what I have said to you and My disciples: teach them before anything else to know the one, only true God and His Kingdom of eternal love and truth, and teach them, by your example, to act according to the teaching that you have received from Me. Then they will be raised by My Spirit in them to all truth and wisdom.

[2] That all phenomena, on the whole Earth as well as with man, have a most inner and spiritual, living cause, I have shown you sufficiently in Pella. But it is therefore not necessary to let them know and make them familiar with it right from the beginning, but only the main thing which you know very well. Once that has taken root, all the rest will be accomplished easily and as of itself.

[3] You should not busy yourselves to explain the phenomena in the natural world, especially not in the beginning. Firstly because even for you it is not completely clear yet, and in the second place because the true salvation of life of a human soul does not depend on the knowledge of this. However, teach the people only to really believe in Me and to live and act according to My will, as you know it. Then I Myself will take care of all the rest. Because the one who keeps My commandments and who actively and truly loves Me above all, to that person I will come Myself and reveal Myself to him in everything, according to his understanding.

[4] Because the talents are differently distributed by Me among human beings, so that each one can serve his fellowman according to his own talent in the neighborly love that I commanded. Therefore, for the moment you should less concern yourselves with the development of special talents for the people, but only with the main teaching that you have received from Me. Of all the rest – as already said – I will take care Myself.”

[5] When the subordinate heard this from Me, he thanked Me

and did not ask Me anymore concerning these things.

[6] During this instructive opportunity, the sun had already completely risen above the horizon, and a messenger came from the house to tell us that the morning meal was ready. Then we stood up and went to the house.

[7] Arriving at the house, it simply seemed to be besieged by several citizens of this city, for they had heard that the captain had been busy the whole night in the house of the Jews, and in return of a reward they gladly wanted to know from one of the residents of the house what actually happened there. However, when they saw and recognized the captain and his servants from a distance, they immediately gave up their actual siege of the house and went back a little so that we could enter the house unhindered.

[8] We soon partook of the well-prepared morning meal, and no one was especially concerned with the citizens of this city who watched the house.

[9] Soon after that, the mayor of this city came and waited for the captain.

[10] When he announced himself by one of his servants whom he took along, the captain asked Me if he should let him in or not.

[11] **I** said: “Just let this man come to us, for also he will become an instrument for Me.”

## 48. THE MAYOR OF ABILA



AFTER that, the captain let the mayor come in, and when he entered our big and beautifully arranged dining hall he asked him at once what he wanted.

[2] **The mayor**, who was a very intelligent man, with great experience and who very well knew the house of the Jews before, from the inside as well as from the outside, said fully amazed: “High ruler, in name of the great and mighty emperor in Rome, the greatest and mightiest city of the whole world,

because I heard that you were here, certainly because of urgent official matters, it was not more and not less my sworn holy duty to wait for you and to ask you very submissively if you perhaps would need my services. And so I am standing fully surprised here before you, and I already think in advance that you hardly will need my services, for you were capable to secretly change the fully ruined house of the poor Jews into a true palace without even telling me or asking for my help. Therefore, also this time I will be completely useless to you. But if you nevertheless need my help for something, then even with my life I am at your service.”

[3] **The captain said:** “You may stay here now, because this time you still will have to serve me in many ways. But sit down first and drink a cup of the oldest and best wine that comes from ancient times and was found well preserved in clean containers of stone in a cellar that was completely buried.”

[4] **The mayor sat immediately next to the captain, took the cup and tasted the wine first. When he was completely convinced of its quality, he drank the wine from the cup with big gulps and said:** “I already tasted many drinks of the best wines that I know but a better than this one never flowed over my lips. O captain, in every respect you are generally known as a great man and a hero without equal who is honored and respected by many because of your actions, but forgive me if I make here a small remark: if this is only your work, then you are more a god than a human being. Because to royally restore that old castle in such a short time while I did not notice it, this can only be possible to gods, but never to human beings, no matter how hard they work and how much insight they may have. For even the best and most skilful construction workers would certainly need more than 10 years of fulltime work for the restoration of such a ruin.”

[5] **The captain said:** “Your remark is completely correct. But it does not apply to me. On who, that you will soon come to hear, and only after that you will be of service to me – but

drink now.”

[6] Then **the mayor** let his cup be filled once more and drank it to the last drop to the honor of the wonderful Restorer of that old castle, who is gifted with true divine power. Then he said: “High ruler, now I would – if you like – convince myself and see if the whole castle that must have had a lot of rooms before, according to its very large space, is in the same good architectural condition as this big dining hall that was previously inhabited by all kinds of vermin.”

[7] **The captain** said: “This we certainly can do if it suits the One among us, whom you still do not know.”

[8] **I** said: “It suits Him completely, for it is only by great signs that the gentiles – especially the hard stoics like this mayor is one of them – can be converted to the faith in the one, only true God and Lord of Heaven and Earth of eternity, for whom all things are possible and who by His word has created everything out of Himself and gave them their form.”

#### 49. THE CAPTAIN INSTRUCTS THE MAYOR ABOUT THE LORD



WHEN I had said that, we stood up from the table and went through all the big and small rooms as well as the very big cellar. And the mayor was so much amazed and surprised that from sheer awe he hardly dared to speak.

[2] Only when after a couple of hours we came back in the big dining hall and took place around the table, he said (**the mayor**): “Only now I believe that there is a God of eternity, meaning only the One in whom the Jews believe – but still very weak – and whom they worship from time to time and for whose honor they spend 1 day in the week. Because such things can only be possible for the One who has build – out of Himself by His eternal powerful word – the wide Heaven and this Earth which no human being has yet fathomed, and who build, adorned, brought to life and populated it with numberless plants,

animals and human beings in a big variety. O captain, let me know that God better.”

[3] **The captain said:** “See there the Man who sits at my right side and who speaks with my daughter, whom He miraculously healed from a very malicious disease in Pella. I do not have to tell you more for the moment. You will receive more details and extended information later.”

[4] **Then the mayor looked at Me more closely and then said softly to the captain:** “He also looks like a human being, and regarding His clothing He looks like a Jew from Galilee. But He must be an extremely pious Man and be completely devoted to the great God of the Jews, because the great God exalted Him to such unheard-of power, as it must also have happened with other very pious Jews in former times.”

[5] **The captain said:** “Partly you are right, but by far still not completely. But in time everything will become clear to you.”

[6] **Now I turned to the captain and said:** “Now you can teach him more, for he will understand it.”

[7] **Then the captain taught the mayor about Me, even to the amazement of My disciples, and he understood and grasped everything, and there was no more doubt in his soul.**

[8] **When the mayor could well perceive now who was in Me, he stood up, went with full respect to Me and said in full devotion:** “Lord, Lord, You only are the One in whom I from now on will really believe with my whole house without any doubt. But please tell me also what I should do to make sure that my faith could possibly also pass in a short time into the hearts of other people. For my attitude is now such that I immediately would like to make all other people as happy and satisfied as what made me extremely happy and blissfully satisfied, which will of course often not go as quickly with our weak human strength as we wish and would like to see happen. But *with* You, o Lord, Lord, all means are already known since eternity, and so only You can reveal them to me.”

## 50. LOVE AND PATIENCE, THE 2 GREATEST VIRTUES OF MAN



SAID: “Love and patience are the 2 greatest things for everything in this world, as well as in the eternal infinity. You truly do not lack love. That is why I let Myself be found and soon be recognized by you, but you still lack the right patience that has to be in harmony with love.

[2] Do today in My name only as much as this is possible for you, then the next day will tell you what you should do to achieve a noble purpose. Because look, in this very big *world* for you people, nothing can be so easily broken over the knee than an old moldered piece of wood. For if it would be like that I never would have taken on flesh and blood, would not have come to you people as a human being and teach you Myself, with great difficulty and extremely great patience, the things of My Kingdom.

[3] Every person has his completely free will, and this has to be considered and respected before anything else. So it would not be so good to directly show the people this great miracle that I performed, in particular those who did not yet occupy themselves intensively with the doctrine of the stoics. But they should be instructed about My existence that has no beginning and no end in the spirit. That means about the one, only true God. After that, it has to be made clear to them what My will is, and that the one who will comply with that will, has reached *the right goal*.

[4] And when the people will accept that without any outer pressure – whether it is physical or moral – and seriously begin to live according to that teaching, then you also can talk to them about My special signs and about My omnipresence, and that will strengthen them in their faith and will make them act accordingly.

[5] But the hard stoics you can begin to convert them with the signs that I performed, for they who despise life and wish to be



dead and not exist, can bear a harder push without them suffering any harm to the freedom of their will.

[6] However, do not talk immediately too much about this sign here, for in this city live 2 people that I healed in Pella, of which the captain and his subordinates know well the details, and those 2 healed ones will surely give a good testimony about Me. Only after that, you can begin to speak about what happened here.

[7] Do what I have told you now, with all love and patience, then in this manner in My name you will have a rich harvest of people for My Kingdom of Life.

[8] Because look, the lord of a vineyard let come 2 workers in his vineyard and promised each one of them the same very great reward. Then the 2 hired workers divided the vineyard among each other in equal parts.

[9] The one worker wanted to show the lord that he was very zealous and active in order to later receive a good reward from him, and he worked without pausing or resting. So he soon was ready with his work. But by the great haste and impatience his work was for the greatest part very messy, and the vineyard produced a meager harvest for the lord.

[10] The 2<sup>nd</sup> worker gave himself the time and reflected well on each grapevine how it should be treated to give a rich harvest to the lord. So it took longer for him with his part than his fellow worker, but when the harvest came, his part was greatly filled with the most beautiful grapes.

[11] And when the lord gathered the harvest he greatly praised the 2<sup>nd</sup> worker and gave him his reward. But to the 1<sup>st</sup> worker who worked with great haste he gave no reward because he rather damaged the vineyard than accomplishing any profit.

[12] Do also remember that when you want to accomplish a true useful work in My vineyard of human lives.

[13] The people are the grapevines and have to be treated differently according to their different nature and character. Thus, do as I have shown you now, then you will reap good fruits in My Kingdom and receive an excellent reward.

[14] Especially teach the people only about the truth, then you will free them of everything that captures their souls and you yourselves will by that experience and enjoy the blissfulness of the greatest freedom in your heart.”

## 51. THE MIDDAY MEAL AND THE DEPARTURE OF THE LORD



HEY all thanked Me for this lesson, and the mayor stood up from the table to leave because he saw that the eldest had given his personnel instruction to put the midday meal on the table. But I asked him to stay and to partake of the midday meal with us, and he stayed and ate with us.

[2] When he saw the noble fishes, he asked the captain if and when he perhaps had given the fishes from Gennesaret or Gadara to the Jews.

[3] **But the captain said:** “Friend, not I did this, but only and solely the Lord for whom everything is possible, of which you were able to convince yourself enough today. And so these fishes are also a sign of His divine power and glory. Eat them, and strengthen yourself with them – your body and in the heart of your soul.”

[4] Then the mayor took a fish and ate it immediately, since it tasted extremely well to him, but he did not take a second one because he already felt completely strengthened with that one fish.

[5] A lot of things were still talked about during the meal, about the phenomena and the things in the natural world, and the mayor experienced great joy on it.

[6] The conversation was also about dreams, and I Myself explained to them the inner world of the dreams and showed them the divine, creating power that is still not developed in the soul, and that he can attain to his highest development and perfection by faithfully acting according to My teaching.

[7] **The Greek** experienced also a great joy on that, as well as

the captain, and he said: “O, the people know all together nothing, and they are nothing compared to You, o Lord, Lord.”

[8] **I** said: “That is why I came to you in this world, to show you the way on which, while walking on, you can attain to that perfection in all things that I unchangeably and immutably possess from eternity. I am all in all, and everything is in Me and from Me. And so you also will be with Me as My children.

[9] I say to you: no eye has ever seen, no ear has ever heard, and in no human thought has it ever come up what kind of blissfulness is prepared for those who love Me and who faithfully keep My commandments. So be sober, zealous in all things that are good and true, and be active with all the love and patience, so that My Spirit can awake and rise in you and will show you, in the clearest light, the inner divine world in the heart of your soul. For in this lies hidden an undiscovered extremely blissful eternity for the outer man, and no one except Me knows the way to it. But I have shown you that way. Therefore, follow it, so that you can attain to the divine world in yourself.”

[10] After these words of Mine, **the Greek** said: “This is a very deep inner wisdom, but I could not completely understand it, for I certainly am still completely an outer man in everything. That is why I will try to gradually put off that outer man completely in order to understand the inner *man* more and more. O Lord, Lord, be and remain helpful to me in this heavy task. For only with Your help can man, who is poor and weak when he is on his own, attain to everything, but without that help eternally to nothing else than death, which everyone must once experience – a destiny which will really not help to make a deep thinking man cheerful and happy. And that is also why no one has seen us, adherers of Diogenes, walking around with a happy face.

[11] But from now on, now that I personally have seen and spoken to the Creator and the Lord of Life and all things and have convincingly heard from His mouth that there is eternally no death for man, I became very cheerful in my heart. O Lord,

Lord, keep me in that cheerfulness, because a sad person cannot have any pleasure in a good work.”

[12] **I** said: “If you do your part, I will do Mine. But do not desire too much cheerfulness of life as long as you are still walking in the flesh, for then the soul can easily go astray into the worldly and the material, and then he will only find the way to life very difficultly in the right perfection.

[13] Bear joy and sorrow with the right patience and in full dedication to My will, then later in My Kingdom you will be adorned with the crown of life.

[14] But now My time has also come for this place, and I will leave you now and go to another place where there are also many dead whom I want to awaken to life. You, captain, are free now to accompany Me to Golan.”


[15] **The captain** said: “O Lord and Master, I would like to accompany You much farther if this would be pleasing to You, for in this springtime, as far as my work is concerned, I have the time for it. But to the places that are under my command, I certainly will accompany You because I have to review them anyway. My subordinates will therefore also go with us, as well as my daughter. And so we can go on our way now.”

[16] Now also the Jews of this house came, thanked Me deeply moved for the wonderful mercy I had shown to them, and they asked Me not to leave them with My help in case of necessity.

[17] I promised them that I would stay with them in the spirit if they would stay in My teaching. The captain promised them also that he would protect them, and also the mayor *said the same*.

## THE LORD IN GOLAN

### 52. THE ARRIVAL IN GOLAN

HEN all this was taken care of, we stood up from the table and went to Golan. However, we made a small detour outside of the city in order not to provoke unnecessary sensation in the city. And on that way, also the mayor escorted us, because for the moment he also wanted to avoid the many questioners who were waiting for him. On the other side of the city, on the way to Golan, the mayor had an old friend. He visited him and so he said goodbye to us, and we peacefully continued our way.

[2] The way from Abila to Golan was rather difficult, and only close to the evening we reached the mentioned place. When we arrived before the gate of the city we met several Jews who lived in this city and who spend the time in having a walk. Because according to the strict precepts of the Sabbath they were not able to do this earlier, for it was only allowed after sunset.

[3] When they saw us coming and recognized us as Jews, an elder came to us at once and asked us from where we came and if we did not know that a real Jew could not violate the Sabbath, also not because of a necessary trip in the country as long as the sun was still in the sky and shining.

[4] Now **the captain** went to the elder and said with a serious voice: “There are not only Jews but also we, commanding Romans, are with and amongst them. Your laws are of no concern to us, and if we want and think it is necessary, the stupid Jews must do on a Sabbath what we want. You do not have the right to hold up one of your fellow believers in our company and to ask why he is doing or not doing this or that on one of your Sabbaths. For here, and still over a much greater territory, I am the commander in name of the emperor, and I have the sharp sword of justice in my hand. Whoever will dare

to act contrary to this – whether he is a Jew, a Greek or a Roman, and whether it is on a Sabbath or another day, is the same – he will feel how sharp it is.”

[5] When the Jews recognized the captain and heard those remarks from his mouth, they were greatly frightened and asked him to forgive them with the excuse that they did not see him among the arriving Jews and Greeks and so did not recognize him, for if they would have seen and recognized him they certainly would not have held up the Jews and questioned them because they traveled on the Sabbath, for also they themselves were always loyal subordinates of the Romans and had great respect for their wise laws.

[6] Now **the captain** said: “This time it will be forgiven to you, but in future do not ask anymore to the Jews, also when they arrive here on a Sabbath, why they do not appropriately celebrate that day. For if you will once more do that in your blind zeal I will know how to chastise you for that. And now move on, or return to your dirty houses.”

[7] Then the Jews bowed deeply before the captain and withdrew quickly into the city, for they thought that in a short time perhaps 100 soldiers would follow the captain, and they did not want to meet them. So they thought that it would be wiser to return to their houses.

[8] When the Jews were returning to their houses, the captain asked Me where I would take residence for the night in this city.

[9] I said: “Friend, there is a Jewish inn on the other side of the city. We will go there and spend the night. The day of tomorrow will show us what further things will have to be done. So let us go to that mentioned Jewish inn.”

[10] As the night was falling we went through the rather big city and so we soon reached the mentioned inn.

[11] When we arrived at this inn, which was not so big, and were standing there, the innkeeper came directly to the porch and asked what we wanted.

[12] I said: “When travelers arrive in the evening before an inn,

they want accommodation for the night. And this is what we also want.”

[13] **The innkeeper said:** “Friend, there certainly must be about 40 of you, and hardly enough space can be found in my house for so many people. There is a big Greek inn further up. There you will easily find a good and comfortable accommodation. Besides, my wife who is good in the kitchen is unfortunately sick. And my 2 daughters who were also somehow not well today cannot do that, even if they were healthy because they are lacking the necessary strength and knowledge. So I can only give you a very meager accommodation while you can receive everything you need in the inn further up.”

[14] **I said:** “This I also know, and already for a long time, but I precisely want to stay overnight in your inn, so that you would receive from us what you need. Let us stay overnight with you.”

[15] **When the innkeeper heard that, he said:** “Yes, if you want to be satisfied with my inn where all things are meager, you surely can come in to see how my inn looks from the inside. If you are pleased, you also can stay. I can give you some wine and bread, and also a few tables and benches around them that are mostly of stone, but the resting places are rather sparse.”

[16] **Upon this, we entered the inn at once where we found a rather large dining room and also many tables, chairs and benches, so that we all could easily take place.**

[17] **The innkeeper instructed right away that lamps should be brought in the dining hall, and he was not little surprised when he also saw the captain Pellagius in our midst, whom he knew well. Now he apologized even more for his poverty by which he, as he said, could only serve such guests very badly. And today also the Sabbath had to be kept on which it was not allowed for the Jews to properly prepare for the evening.**

[18] **But the captain told him not to worry and said:** “If I wanted to have a good and most pleasant accommodation for the night I could have stayed in the castle that is always at my disposal, but because I endlessly care more about this company

than all that vain and perishable worldly splendor, also I will stay with my daughter and my first subordinates with you. And I also stay with you because, before we came to the city, the one true Lord and Master, who is for me all in all, loudly expressed His wish to stay precisely today for the night in your inn.

[19] Who that Lord and Master actually is, you will come to know, by which you also will find salvation and keep it for yourself and your whole house. But let now some bread and wine be set for us on the table.”

[20] Now the innkeeper called immediately his few personnel, and ordered them to set bread, salt and wine on the table, which happened right away.

[21] We immediately took some bread and wine, and the innkeeper himself, who had a very respectable appearance and who was moreover a righteous man, partook of the served evening meal.

### 53. THE LORD HEALS THE SICK WOMAN AND THE 2 DAUGHTERS OF THE INNKEEPER



AFTER we had sufficiently strengthened ourselves with bread and wine, and **our innkeeper** became more talkative, he turned to Me and said: “You undeniably seem to be the Lord and Master with whom – according to the words of our captain and commander – I and my whole house will find our salvation and will also keep and preserve it forever. How will that happen? You look like a Galilean according to Your clothing. How and in what are You then a Lord and Master?”

[2] I said: “Let your sick wife now be brought here and also your 2 sickly daughters, then I will heal them in the same manner as I healed the captain’s daughter whom you see here sitting at his side. And if I will not heal your wife and daughters, no doctor in the whole world will heal them. So act now according to My words, then you will see the power and glory of



## God in Man, whom I am.”

[3] **The innkeeper said:** “Although I am a firm *believing* Jew and I keep the law, but honestly speaking, I became somehow weak in the actual faith. And this for 2 reasons: firstly our prophets have predicted all kinds of things for the benefit of the Jews, and also a Messiah who would come with great power and glory and would reestablish for all times of times our declined and destroyed kingdom. But up to now only very little has come true of all those predictions, and if something came true, then certainly only the bad things came true, and the good things will probably have to wait until the end of times. And under such bad circumstances based on experience, it is difficult to stay strong in faith.

[4] Secondly we Jews must live among the gentiles and socialize with them, and mostly they have no faith at all and mock us if we want to talk to them about our one true and only God, for these gentiles are for the greatest part worldly philosophers, do not believe in their gods and neither in the immortality of the souls, and with a skilful eloquence they show the nullity of all the old matters of faith. To them there is no God, but only all sorts of powers in nature. These create without ceasing according to their specific basic laws, and they destroy again after a short or long time what they have created.

[5] So You see, dear Lord and Master, that our old faith is really at its limit. But this time I want to believe firmly that You certainly will heal my wife and my 2 daughters, and my sick wife as well as my daughters<sup>1</sup> must be brought here immediately.”

[6] **Then the servants of the innkeeper brought soon the wife in her bed to Me in the dining hall, and the 2 daughters came themselves, escorted by the innkeeper who put them near to Me and said to the 3 of them (the innkeeper):** “Look, this is the Lord and Master who will miraculously, and in a to us

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally: the sick wife as well as the daughters.

incomprehensible way, heal you. Believe it and ask Him for it.”

[7] The woman and the 2 daughters did this in a very moving way, and **I** said on this: “Your faith helps you, and I want it. So stand up and walk.”

[8] At that same moment, the wife and also the 2 daughters felt that they were completely healed and strengthened, and the wife left her bed, tried to walk and felt no pain in any part of the body or any weakness. Also the 2 daughters did this and felt the same as their mother.

[9] So all 3 of them came immediately to Me and thanked Me deeply for their healing, and so did also the innkeeper who was extremely surprised about this miraculous manner of healing.

#### 54. THE INNKEEPER AND HIS WIFE ARE SURPRISED ABOUT THE MIRACULOUS POWER OF THE LORD



**A**FTER a while, he said to his wife and 2 daughters (**the innkeeper**): “Since you were now healed by this wonderful Lord and Master, you also must show your gratitude that you owe by going to work. Go to the kitchen and prepare for all a better meal than I could offer them. Take the best from the storeroom and prepare it well.”

[2] The 3, together with the other servants, went joyfully to the assigned work.

[3] And **I** said to the innkeeper: “Friend, you could have spared that trouble to the healed ones, because to us the very good bread and also the excellent wine are sufficient. But since the 3 started the cooking and frying with great joy, they also should finish it.”

[4] I hardly had said that when **the woman** came very joyfully back into the dining hall and said to the innkeeper: “But what happened during my severe sickness – which lasted for half a year – without my knowledge? The big and the small storeroom are overflowing with all kinds of good food. There are large quantities of lentils, beans, flour, oil, tree fruit, big grapes,

several of the biggest pots of honey, dried and smoked fishes, and the bread baskets are full with the nicest loafs of bread. Also the smallest storeroom is overflowing with milk, butter, cheese and fresh eggs, and still more things, with salt, good herbs and roots. When did all that come into the storerooms? I asked the children and the servants, but they could give me no explanation, but they thought that you alone would know. What happened?"

[5] **The innkeeper was in turn very amazed and said:** "If this is what it looks like in the storerooms, I am again starting to believe in the old miracles, and then the manna rain and the falling down of the quails are not a fiction, but truth. I believe that this Lord and Master, who healed you, will know best who has filled our storerooms, for a master who can heal sick people only by his word will also be able to accomplish other things."

[6] **Then also the innkeeper went to see his storeroom and saw that everything was as his wife told him before, and he said:** "That Man must be of a great ancestry. Either He is a great prophet or He is a magician who is thoroughly acquainted with the powers of nature and has acquired His knowledge in Egypt or somewhere else."

[7] **His wife said:** "When He healed me I saw a very bright light coming out of His head, and His whole Being was surrounded with a shining light, and this will surely never be the case with a magician. Something very great and exalted must be hidden behind that Man and maybe also behind those who are with Him. Maybe He finally is – who can tell – even the promised Elijah who precedes the Messiah, or maybe He is the Messiah Himself."

[8] **The innkeeper said:** "You could be right in this, because the one who can accomplish this by the power of his will, must be strongly filled with God's eternal Spirit. That all this came here in the house in a supernatural wonderful way stands clear before our eyes, and we only can deeply thank that great Master. But take care that a good and rich meal will soon be prepared."

[9] Then everyone went to work in the kitchen, and the innkeeper came in deep thoughts back to us in the dining hall.

## 55. THE NATURE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD



WHEN he came back to us, he looked at Me for a while from head to feet and said then (**the innkeeper**): “My wife is right, because You, o Lord and Master, are either the promised prophet Elijah who will precede the Messiah as it is written in the Scripture, or You are finally the great Messiah Himself. For when He comes, He will not be able to do greater signs. If someone can do things which are only possible to God, in him the whole truth of God’s Spirit must live. Although Your body, o Lord and Master, is the same as that of a human being, Your soul is full of divine power and might. Therefore, this power and might in Your soul is glorified and praised above all.”

[2] On this, I said: “Good for you and your house that you have recognized this in Me. But only those will be blissful who will do and fulfill the will of the Father in Heaven who sent Me in this world.

[3] I and the Father are one. He who sees and hears Me, sees and hears also the Father. Without Me, no one can see or hear the Father. Thus he who believes in Me and lives and acts according to My teaching will receive the eternal life from Me.”

[4] With full respect and awe for Me, **the innkeeper** said: “Then what is Your teaching? What should one do to receive the eternal life from You?”

[5] I said: “Who now believes in Me and who is not offended because of Me, and who moreover keeps the commandments given by Moses, has already the eternal life in himself. For I do not give you another law which Moses had also only received from Me, and gave it to the people.

[6] Acknowledge God, love Him above all and your fellowman as yourself, then you will fulfill the whole law, and with that the

will of the One who speaks to you now. Its result will be shown in your soul. Do you understand this?"

[7] **The innkeeper** said: "Yes, o Lord and Master, and in all the weakness of My faith I still have faithfully observed the law of Moses, and from now on I still will observe it more faithfully. But because it is also written that the Messiah will establish a real Kingdom of God on this Earth which will have no end from now on, the question is: how, where and when? Will Your throne be established in Jerusalem or somewhere else, and when will this happen?"

[8] **I** said: "My Kingdom, which I now establish among the people on this Earth, is not a worldly kingdom but a Kingdom of God without any worldly pomp and splendor. It has nothing outwardly but is inwardly in man. And My city, My strong city and the castle where I live is a pure heart that loves Me above all. Look, this is the case with the establishment of My Kingdom on this Earth.

[9] All those who wait for the establishment of a new Kingdom of God on Earth with outer pomp and splendor are in their blind hope seriously mistaken and are misleading themselves, for such will never be established on Earth in the living truth out and in Me.

[10] False prophets will do that under the leadership of My name, but I will never live or throne in such kingdom. Look, this is how it is according to the full truth with the establishment of My Kingdom on this Earth. Do you understand this?"


[11] **The innkeeper** said: "Yes, o Lord and Master, now I also have understood that. But many who cling to the world will not understand that and will wait for an outer big worldly kingdom. But because such will never truly happen on Earth, according to what You said now, many will also stay in their old blindness full of judgment and death.

[12] However, please be also forgiving and merciful to the blind, o Lord, and do not leave us who have recognized the truth, but keep us in the living truth of Your Kingdom on

this Earth, so that we can always live and act according to Your will.”

[13] **I** said: “That was a good prayer, and it will certainly be heard and granted. But now there is already the prepared evening meal, and we will partake of it.”

## **56. THE INNKEEPER AND THE CAPTAIN ARE INSTRUCTED**

OW the servants opened the door and brought the well-prepared foods on the table, and also more bread and wine, and so we partook of the meal. Also the innkeeper refreshed himself at our table. And his wife and his children, who were sitting at another table, ate and drank also with great joy and did not turn their eyes away from Me.

[2] After the meal, the woman and the children came to Me to thank Me for the mercy I had shown to them.

[3] But some disciples became somehow irritated because of the long-lasting gratitude of the woman and the children, and they made signs to indicate to them that they had shown enough gratitude.

[4] **I** surely noticed this and said to the impatient disciples: “How often did I perform signs in your presence, and how often did you satiate yourselves at My table, but I only received little sincere thanks from you. Just let these children have their joy. Truly, the grateful babbling of a child is much more pleasing to Me than the many wise words from the mouth of a learned person, which is a delight for the reason, but which is not very profitable for the heart. Truly, I say to you: the one who will not profess Me before the world, I will also not profess before the Father in Heaven. So let these children have their joy.”

[5] When the disciples heard this rebuke from Me, they controlled themselves and let the children have their joy. And I praised the children, put My hands upon them and then let them go. Then the woman went with the children again to the kitchen

where they had to prepare many things for the next morning.

[6] I still taught the innkeeper till the middle of the night about several things, to which also the captain with his subordinates and Veronica listened with great attention.

[7] **The captain** said: “Lord, I listened to You in Pella and Abila and I well remember all the things that I have heard and seen from You, but now I openly must confess that You spoke now very clearly to the innkeeper about things that were completely strange and new to me, and I cannot thank You enough for this, o You dear Lord and Master, because now I have a much deeper insight than before in the secrets of Your endless big creation, from the smallest to the unfathomable biggest.”

[8] **I** said: “Yes, My dear friend, I still could tell and reveal a lot of things, to you and to all these disciples of Mine, but you would not yet be able to bear and understand them. But when I will send you the eternal spirit of truth and will have penetrated into your souls you will be exalted into all wisdom.

[9] That I could talk now to our innkeeper about so many things that were still strange and new to you is because this innkeeper is very well acquainted with the Scripture, but not so much in the pure understanding thereof. You also know many things from the Scripture of the Jews, but not as this innkeeper. That is why I could talk to him about things that were strange and new to you. If you will read, with the right attention, through the whole Scripture that reaches almost up to these days, you still will come across many things that will seem very new and strange to you. Then you will examine them with your reason but will not find and recognize the meaning of the hidden inner truth. But with the Spirit, which I also will send to you, you will recognize the inner meaning.

[10] However, if you still want to have a deeper understanding about the things of the natural world, then visit your colleague in Gennesaret, then you will hear a lot of things from him that are still strange to you now. For I always teach the people according

to their ability to absorb things and according to the things about which they have reflected already many times but to which they could not come to any truth despite all their efforts. And so this is why I always come as if with something new, but actually it is nothing strange or new but something that was already there but not yet recognized or understood by the people.”

[11] The captain and all the others who were with the captain understood this, as well as My disciples. It was only now that the disciples understood also deeper why I taught, besides the main teaching which was of course always the same, also different things to the people in different places, in such a way that they could understand it and which were more or less necessary for them.

## 57. PREDICTION OF A COMING STORM



WHEN I also had finished this clear conversation with the captain, **the innkeeper** said to Me: “Lord and Master, we have stayed awake for half of the night and this was a very great blessing for my house, but if now one of all those present want to go to rest, then please tell me, o Lord, and I will immediately do everything to fulfill Your wish.”

[2] **I** said: “Friend, it is alright. We will stay as usual at the table to rest for the whole night. If you want to go to rest in a more comfortable way, you are of course free *to do so*, but we will stay here.

[3] However, for this night it is advisable not to use too much time in sleeping, but rather to stay awake, for in less than 1 hour it will show that it is necessary and wise that we are awake. This region is in this time mostly exposed to great storms and earthquakes, and something similar will soon come this way, and then it is advisable to stay awake and to watch to see in which direction the storm will go.”

[4] **The innkeeper** said: “But Lord and Master, full of divine wisdom and power, You surely are also Lord over every evil



power which always comes from the evil devils in Hell or are at least very often visibly sustained by them. Only one almighty word from You and no storm can come.”

[5] **I** said: “In a certain way you have spoken correctly but only as far as your knowledge reaches in the things of the natural world.

[6] It is true that such storms are now and then also sustained by the devils, but this cannot prevent the divine love and wisdom to let the natural storm break loose. For in the Earth are still resting numberless nature spirits who must in the course of time all come to salvation, and since this region is extremely rich in such raw nature spirits of all kinds and sorts, it is also completely within the order to let the nature spirits, who became mature, brake loose to arise in a somehow more free existence. And it is undeniably better to let these nature spirits burst out into smaller groups than to hold them back, after which then many groups would burst out in one time and would then inevitably cause very great devastations. This has already been the case in some places on Earth where such spirits, after they were held back for a long time, have devastated whole lands when they finally had burst out, and they are now still there as deserts where nothing grows and where nothing will grow for a long time.

[7] So you can understand why I have to let burst out the storm that I just announced. However, no one should be afraid of it, but it is better to stay awake during a storm than to sleep in a bed.”

[8] The innkeeper was satisfied with this explanation.

[9] But the disciple **Simon Judah** said to Me: “Lord and Master, You said here that it is better to stay awake during a storm than to sleep in a bed, and You slept once during a big storm when we were on the Lake of Galilee, in a terribly staggering ship, so that we had to wake You up in order not to perish. You also were immediately awake and threatened the monster storm, and at once the hurricane was quiet and there were no more waves on the water surface. The skippers and a

few other people who were with us in the ship were surprised and said among each other, with their eyes directed towards You: ‘See, who could He be that the wind and the lake obey Him?’

[10] I surely can see that it is much more advisable to stay awake during a storm but until now I still cannot completely see why You slept at that time, precisely during the worst roaring of the storm.”

[11] **I** said: “I slept at that time for the sake of you all, to put your still somewhat little faith to a small test and to strengthen it through that. Besides, I did not say to the innkeeper that it also would be advisable for Me to stay awake during the storm that will soon brake loose, for I am not the One for whom My advice should serve as a guideline for his live and existence, but I give all kinds of advices and lessons only for the sake of you people, so that you can conform to them and would become perfect in everything. If I would want it, I also could go to sleep from the beginning of the storm until the end of it since I did not give that advice for Myself. But because of your faintheartedness, also I will stay awake with you.”

[12] When Simon Judah heard this from My mouth, he did not ask any further, for he and also all the others understood now what I had said to them. And they all waited now with great tension for the breaking out of the storm.

[13] **The innkeeper**, who despite My presence became more and more afraid, said to Me: “O Lord and Master, should I also not wake up those in my house who must be asleep now?”

[14] **I** said: “Just leave it, because it is sufficient now that we are awake. However, the storm itself will wake up the inhabitants of this city and drive them out of their houses, and on this opportunity we still will have a lot to do.”

## 58. THE NIGHTLY STORM



HARDLY had said these words when a first mighty blast of wind came up, after which directly also a little earthquake could be felt.

[2] After that, a heavy rustling and roaring came up that sounded as if it was half an hour of walking away, but it became more violent from moment to moment. Very soon it came close to the city and it woke up many inhabitants because of the terrible howling, rattling, rumbling and thundering. They went out of their houses into the streets and squares of the city from great fear to be buried in their houses that were in danger of collapsing.

[3] Despite the raging hurricane, many of them hurried to the open field, howling from fright and fear. And when the wind became heavier, several of them returned to the city and said to their neighbors that it was much more difficult to be in the open field than in the city behind strong walls.

[4] Many of them who were running before our inn were surprised about our courage and persistence. And a couple of neighbors of the *innkeeper* came to us in the dining hall and shouted to the innkeeper that he also should go outside because the earth was now and then so terribly shaking that it could be feared that soon all the houses would collapse one after another. For all Jewish evils and pagan furies must have broken loose, for otherwise it could not be understood that after such calm day such stormy night could arise.

[5] **The innkeeper** said: “Dear neighbors, my house is already very old and has experienced already many of such trials, and hopefully it also will withstand this one. I trust in my God and Lord who is almighty and full of love, and He will not allow that my house will be damaged by your devils and furies that broke loose.”

[6] **The 2 neighbors** said: “Ah, do not tell me about all those gods, whether they are of the Jews or the gentiles. To what

advantage is it to them to completely senselessly torment poor, weak mankind during the night? We Romans have called out to all the gods, and several priests are loudly screaming, and also the Jews of this city are crying out in their synagogues to their Jehovah for help, help, help, but the storm and the terribly trembling of the earth do not stop but are getting worse by each moment. Then it is: man, help yourself as good, as much and as far as you can, for the gods do not listen to your begging and do not consider your fear and need.”

[7] **The innkeeper said:** “Friends, if your faith and trust in a god is so weak, then you can of course do nothing else expect to help yourselves the best you can, but my only true God and Lord has clearly shown me that this storm would come during this night over this region for very wise reasons and that I do not have to fear it. And look, as it was foretold to me, so it also happened, and that is why I have no fear.

[8] For you always speak out your proud proverb: ‘Si totus illabatur orbis, impavidum ferient ruinae’<sup>1</sup>. How do you show now the truth thereof?

[9] I am a believing Jew, trusting and constructing on my only true and living God, and I never have bragged about such courage, but instead of that I always live in the right awe for God. And look, He is giving me more courage and true self-control than your pretentious courage-proverb. If you would do as I, you also could have quietly stayed in your houses.”

[10] **The 2 neighbors said:** “Friend, although you are right, but it is not our fault that we do not have your faith. And concerning your faith, we will discuss about that tomorrow, if we will survive.”

[11] **The 2 saw now also the other guests in the weaker lights of the lamps in our hall, and they wanted to ask the innkeeper who those guests were, but their women and children called out to them from the porch from fear and fright, and the 2 went outside**

---

<sup>1</sup> Latin: ‘If the whole world would collapse and its pieces would fall down on me, I will remain fearless’.

again into the streets, and they looked at their houses to see whether they were damaged. They could not see any damage in the weak moonlight but they nevertheless did not dare to go into their houses because the earth's surface was still perceptibly trembling from time to time.

[12] The innkeeper asked Me how long the storm would still last.

[13] **I** said to him: “One more hour, and this time no one will suffer any damage. But you have spoken correctly to your neighbors, and they also will be joined to us tomorrow. But now we can rest until the morning, and the morning will give us much work to do.”

[14] Then they all slept soon and rested until the morning that was hazy this time.

## 59. OUTSIDE AFTER THE STORM



**B**eing completely strengthened, we woke up in the morning, and when the disciples saw that it was a very hazy morning they asked Me if I would go outside also on this morning.

[2] **I** said: “We often have experienced such hazy mornings and hazy days, and then I still went outside with you. So, also this morning we can spend 1 hour outside. On this hazy morning I want to perform a sign for the gentiles who do not have any faith, so that they can more easily be converted to the faith in one, only true God, and that is why we will go outside also on this morning. But he who wants to stay in the house can stay.”

[3] **They all** said: “Lord, we will not leave You. We will go where You go, and we always want to be with You.”

[4] **I** said: “Then stand up, and we will go outside.”

[5] On this call of Mine they all stood up – also the innkeeper – and we prepared ourselves to go outside. And when the innkeeper had given instructions for the morning meal we went outside on the large road that went along the inn.

[6] When we were outside on the road, we saw a large crowd of people who lay on the large road, because the people did not dare to spend the night in their houses.

[7] The storm and the rather powerful earthquakes had completely calmed down but everyone was afraid that it would start again. That is why they did not dare to return to their houses and they spend the night in the open air.

[8] We also met the 2 neighbors of the innkeeper who visited us at night during their great fright when the storm was at its worst but could not recognize us because of the darkness in the dining hall.

[9] When they saw the innkeeper and next to him also the captain, whom they knew well, they walked to the innkeeper and the captain, greeted especially the captain and his subordinates and said that they were lucky that they had come through the night without having suffered any damage.

[10] The captain responded to the morning greeting and asked the two if they had spend the night outside just like the other inhabitants of this place.

[11] **The two answered:** “High commander, we did not have the courage for that. Although we were in our houses until the storm broke loose, but when the earth’s surface started to shake we left our houses, just like almost all the other citizens of this city, to find protection outside for the sake of our life and the life of our family members.

[12] If our old houses were made of wood, like most of the houses in Galilee, Judea and still other regions that are rich in wood, the storm and the earthquake would not have driven us outside, but since our houses are build from stones that can be found nearby and can easily brake, and that can easily collapse with a heavy earthquake, it is obviously very advisable to leave the houses as fast as possible during such heavy calamities and to go outside.”

[13] **The captain said:** “Then how about the protection of the gods for which most Greeks and Romans have a great esteem?”

[14] Look, I was in this Jewish inn without any fear or fright under the protection of one God in the fullest faith and trust in Him. If you also would have such faith and trust, you certainly would have stayed in your houses without any fear or fright to be overtaken by any discomfort while you moreover still know that the houses have withstood already a lot of storms and maybe even greater ones. Only a firm faith and a true trust in the one true, almighty, extremely wise, extremely good, all-knowing and all-seeing God will protect you against such fright and fear. The one who does not have such faith and such trust, will, during all stormy phenomena that always happen on Earth, be exposed to all possible torment and pain, and the greatest of all when his last hour will inevitably stand before the door. Do you understand this?”

## 60. THE CAPTAIN SPEAKS ABOUT HOW ONE SHOULD SEEK GOD



**ONE of the two said:** “High commander, we see that you are really very right. And happy and blissful can every man be praised who can firmly believe and trust like you, because he certainly will very well bear every discomfort that can happen to him on this Earth, and he is always fully comforted in his mind.

[2] But how can we obtain such faith and such trust? Look, up there on the largest part of our main road are our first priests of Zeus and Apollo, and not far away from them, 2 Jewish rabbis. Our priests show us through their conduct how little value they attach to the gods for their own salvation, and so also the Jewish priests show that their faith and trust in their one and only true God is not one hair better than that of our priests.

[3] Oh, as soon as all danger of a possibly following nightly storm is over they will immediately appear and will dynamically begin to preach about the gods who are angry because our faith in them is weak, and that our offerings are much too little, and

they will say that if we will persevere in our unbelief and will continue to bring too little expensive offerings in the temples of the gods, the gods will become even more angry and will make a dessert of this whole country.

[4] Maybe even today they will begin to wail in this manner in their temples, and they probably would already have started if a clear morning would have shown them that they do not have to be afraid for a returning storm, but the very hazy and still threatening morning is still holding them back.

[5] And it is also the same with the priests of the Jewish God. They also must already keep loud preachings for repentance and offerings if the very dark and ominous morning would not have kept them away from entering their synagogues to only wail to their own advantage.

[6] Look, high commander, we can very clearly see the already long existing deceits of our and the Jewish priests, and with every somehow dangerous opportunity we experience that the priests are the first who run away and are clearly showing by that how little faith and trust they possess regarding the gods they praise so highly. If in the army the generals run away for the enemy, from where should their soldiers obtain their courage? But if the gods, seen in light of the reason, mean as good as nothing to the priests, then what must and can they mean to us?

[7] And so, high commander, it is really very difficult for us, even impossible to obtain a firm faith and trust in our gods, or in the one God of the Jews. And therefore we cannot be blamed for our old proverb according to which everyone should help himself, and if he cannot do that then the gods as well as his fellowmen will let him down.

[8] But you, high commander, have spoken a good and true word to us, and after all, a God as you described to us must exist. But where is He? How can one truly find the way to Him?"

[9] **The captain said:** "For a worldly person this is of course not



as easy as so many worldly intelligent people might think, and they say: 'If one or several gods exist, they should make it easy for us people to find them if they want to be known and honored by us – as all the priests are strictly imposing on the people everywhere. And if the gods will not let themselves be found by the people, quickly and easily, then they do not want to be known and honored at all, or they do not exist at all, and then all searching is useless.'

[10] But I say to you that this is not so. For firstly, there is since eternity only one, sole true God, and that God wants people to search Him, find Him, be known and honored by strictly keeping His commandments that He gave to us for our salvation. And secondly, since there is a God who can very well be perceived in His works by everyone who somehow wants to make the effort to search, man should also zealously search that God with a true love's desire, but not from today until tomorrow like thoughtless children, but from day to day with an ever increasing zeal and diligence and with a growing desire to love Him, and then God will let Himself be found by such seeker as He let Himself be found by me and many others.

[11] And when He let Himself be found by one or more people who search for Him in the right manner, He will tell such faithful seekers what they further should do according to His extremely wise will and how they should live in order to stay in His love and mercy and to be awakened for the eternal life of their soul.

[12] And such a person will even under the most threatening circumstances on this material world of trials not become weak or waver in his truly living faith and trust, but he will endure everything without much fear or fright, with all patience and in full dedication to the divine will that he knows. And finally he will thank God for everything because he can see that God has decreed all circumstances in this world only for the real salvation of men. And the one who has found God in such manner has certainly found his highest and most valuable

treasure of his life.

[13] And since that is the highest and most valuable treasure of a human life – which you can understand now – it is certainly well worth to search for such treasure with the greatest zeal and seriousness until it is found.

[14] People are making every effort to pursue and seek worldly, perishable treasures and goods. The one drills into the mountains to find gold, silver and precious stones. Another one dives into the deepest of the sea to find a few pearls. A third one sails on a bad ship over the wide, stormy sea to sell his goods from his own country in a foreign country for a few pennies more. And so the one is busy with this and the other one with that, and no trouble is too great for it as long as he can get hold of some perishable advantage for his life. But why do people not also want to take the trouble to search for the highest treasure of life while they know that those who sought that treasure with true zeal have also faithfully and truly found it?”

## 61. THE GOOD INTENTIONS OF THE NEIGHBORS



ONE of the 2 neighbors said again: “Yes, high commander, you are completely right in all your loving words, which are a real guide for searching the supreme treasure of life, and with that we will also start to search for it, since a certain inner trust in us shows us already now that we will not search in vain.

[2] But up to now it was never possible because on the one hand our priests were pushing us and on the other hand we had the opportunity to observe Judaism in which we only found very little theosophy and a still greater wilderness of all kinds and sorts of superstition than with us. So we took the middle way, observed the nature, found laws in it and lived according to them for ourselves, although we outwardly went along with our cult of the gods for the sake of the state laws, of course only reluctantly.

[3] So, as already said, it was for us – but also for many others who were completely of the same opinion – up to now totally impossible to search for the supreme and most valuable treasure of life. That which cannot be searched, because all the necessary means are lacking, cannot also never be found.

[4] But now, by your goodness and true mercy, we received a way that is certainly reliable. And based on that, we will also start to search for the supreme treasure of life, and will not rest until we have found it, for it is well worth it to search for such treasure because the eternal existence of the soul depends on it.”

[5] **Now I said:** “Know that a completely serious will to do a work, by which a very high and really excellent goal of life can be achieved, is practically already the work in itself, because the accomplished work, in its full extent, will come all the sooner once the decision has been taken – this according to the seriousness of the will of the one who starts to accomplish a work. Your commander has already shown you the right way and given you the right means.”

[6] **The former speaker said:** “Friend, You already seem to have found that supreme treasure of life, for You speak completely in the spirit of our high commander. According to Your clothing You are a Galilean. Also the others look more like Galileans than Judeans, and from the Galileans we know that they are not exactly great heroes in faith. But this does not matter, because also amongst the Galileans there may be people who have already discovered the way to search for the supreme treasure of life, who have searched for it and also found it. So we are very happy with you all, because the fact that you could have stayed this night full of terrors in a house that could have easily be destroyed, is our proof that you, just like our high commander, have also found the one, true God who can excellently protect you in all dangers.”

[7] **I said:** “Your are right, but we cannot speak about this further here because the crowd assembles more and more around us, for they saw the captain and are therefore very

curious to know which orders he wants to give here on this early morning. So let us go to an open space outside of the city from where we have a large view. There we will be able to discuss further about this subject.”

[8] The 2 neighbors thought that this was a good idea, and they went, together with their family members, with us outside of the city where there was a rather high hill upon which was an old ruin that was once used by the Philistines as stronghold.

## 62. THE AFTERMATH OF THE STORM AND THE EARTHQUAKE



WHEN we were on the mentioned hill, we saw in the east, at a distance of a few hours walking, in several places smoke coming out from the ground, and here and there a flame was flaring up, but only for a few moments and it did not last as the smoke.

[2] We watched this natural scene for a while.

[3] When we were as if satiated from the view, **the captain came to Me and said:** “O Lord and Master, look, the nature spirits are still not resting, and as I experienced already many times, those smoke and fire phenomena after a storm as we experienced tonight, will often last for several days, and even more often for a few weeks. And by that, one can now and then clearly feel the Earth’s vibrations which will not exactly make the weak human mind cheerful. Why actually do these consequences of a great storm have to last that long?”

[4] **I said:** “Friend, in Pella, where you are actually residing, you have a rather big fish pond that you let construct for a lot of money. If you want to breed good and healthy fish in that pond, you have to drag the mud out of it from time to time. To do this, you have to empty it completely. When the main drainage of the pond is opened, the water will first flow out of the pond with great force through the opened drainage. But gradually it will flow out less strongly, and at the end you can see the water

only dripping out, and then you can start to clean the pond. Yes, why did you actually not install a kind of draining system that when you open it, all the water of the pond can flow out in one moment?

[5] Look, friend, everything in the world happens within a certain order that depends on time without which nothing can happen, and if here and there something will not happen within the right order of time, it will proportionally always result in some interference.

[6] You shortsighted people are taking care of a certain order in your actions and work to be sure to reach a goal that you have set, and you say that fast and clumsy work is good for nothing. Would God, the eternal Foreman of His great works, be perhaps less wise and intelligent than you people? So let everything happen as it happens, then it will be all right.”

[7] The captain was satisfied with that, and he thanked Me for this lesson.

[8] Also **the 2 neighbors** of our innkeeper heard these words of Mine with great attention, and they said to the innkeeper: “It seems that this Galilean is much wiser than our captain. Although we did not really understand what it was all about, but it is very clear to us that for the captain – who certainly very well knows the one, only true God – this annoying phenomenon lasted too long. But this Galilean showed him with a brilliant example the order that God always follows in all His actions, and why. And look, the captain thanked the wise Galilean very much for this lesson.

[9] But what can this Galilean be more? For although our captain is a very good and righteous man, he does not easily say ‘Lord and Master’ to someone, and certainly not to a Jew. Then why does he give Him so much honor?”

[10] **The innkeeper said:** “Although you do not understand this now but the time will probably soon come when you will understand it.”

[11] **Those words made the 2 neighbors of the innkeeper even**

more curious as to who and what I actually was. But they did not dare to ask the captain and certainly not Me about this.

[12] Now a rather hard wind from the east came blowing in our direction, and it did not take long before we had to bear the strongly smelling smoke of sulfur and pitch. And the captain, his daughter and his subordinates, as well as a few of My disciples, for who that smoke was unpleasant, asked Me to command the wind to blow the malicious smoke of sulfur and pitch into another direction where there were no people, or if we otherwise could retreat to the inn in order to avoid suffocation.

[13] **I** said: “Just look behind you at the city, then you will see a crowd of curious people thronging up because they want to see and listen what we our doing here. And in front are the pagan priests and also the 2 rabbis and a few Jews who halted us at our arrival. Those are more unpleasant to Me than the smoke of sulfur and pitch that blows from the east.

[14] This is exactly why I let this wind come up in order to get rid of those troublesome hearers and listeners. Look how they already begin to return to the city because they are afraid that the matter will become worse. Most of them will return to their houses, and then we will have a greater freedom for our actions.”

[15] However, there were a few inhabitants of the city around the hill who went out of the city with us, and the captain wanted one of his subordinates to sharply indicate to them that they also had to return to the city.

[16] But **I** said to the captain: “These are better souls. They should stay here as witnesses for the others.”

[17] Also the captain agreed on that, and those who stood around the hill stayed.

[18] **The 2 neighbors** of our innkeeper were more and more surprised and said to him: “Just listen friend, this is a very remarkable Man. In a certain way, He commanded that maliciously smelling smoke from the east to float this way in order to drive away those guests who were massively thronging

up to us, and when the captain wanted to send away the people who were lying down around the hill, and who are, as we know, poor but real honest souls, that Man did not want to know about it. And the captain who is otherwise never that complying obeyed Him on His word.

[19] He also knows the character of the people from afar, He keeps the good ones, and in a miraculous manner He drives away those of whom we also know that they are not good people, who, apart from themselves, have never shown any good deed to anyone.

[20] Truly, a remarkable Man that Galilean. He must know God much better and closer than our captain who is otherwise very wise. Well then, we surely are very curious as to what will come next.”

[21] **The innkeeper said:** “Think about what that Man told you in the city outside of the inn. Then you soon will come to know better and more clearly the point where you are now.”

### 63. THE WORDS OF THE NEIGHBORS ABOUT THE POWER OF THE GALILEAN



**I**N this occasion, all the people, who by a malicious curiosity were driven to us from the city, had returned to the city.

[2] When the environment was thus cleansed, I commanded the wind with a loud voice – so that those who were on the hill could well understand it – that it should carry the smoke of sulfur and pitch no more to us but away from us to the deserts of the Euphrates.

[3] And immediately the wind turned so that in a few moments we were freed from the smoke.

[4] When **the 2 neighbors of the innkeeper** noticed this, they said to the innkeeper: “Now it is clear that this Man must be in very close contact with a true God and can make use of His supreme power whenever He wants. This is now completely true

beyond the least of doubt. But how, where and by what can someone attain to such contact?

[5] You Jews are right after all that you believe in only one God, because that one God will surely be the only true One who, by the power of His supreme wise will, created everything we can see with our eyes and observe with our other sense organs.

[6] But how come that you Jews make so little effort to know more closely that only true God of yours, and arrange your actions according to His will that is known to you, so that also you can be in such contact with Him as this greatly to be honored Galilean has achieved and who is also a Jew?

[7] If you know the ways to reach that invaluable goal – a treasure of all treasures – and you nevertheless do not make the effort to acquire it but pursue the perishable, dead treasures of this Earth, often even more than we blind gentiles, than you are very pitiful fools.

[8] We do not want to count you among those series of Jews as we have in our city and whom we know very well. But also from you we know that also regarding your only true, one God you also were not without doubts. The best part of you was that you were no hypocrite as the others of your tribe.

[9] But it is strange of the other Jews, and especially of their priests who act and preach as if it depends only on them what God is allowed to do. And still, as little as our priests, they also are not capable to achieve anything which looks like pure divine power.

[10] This, friendly neighbor, is for us now all the more a mystery because this Galilean convinced us that He must be in a very close, intimate contact of power with the one, only true God, because otherwise the wind would not have obeyed Him as a soldier *obeys* his commander.”

[11] **Now the innkeeper said:** “Friends, you are completely right when you are surprised about the power of God and that you talk and ask without ceasing about our Jewish foolishness and blindness. But now that we talk with each other, the others



keep silent, who can say more about this true subject than we, and this is also not wise. That is why we will talk another time about all those things and will now let the others speak and act.”

[12] **The 2 neighbors agreed completely on the remark of the innkeeper and they asked nothing more, but waited until I would do or say something.**

[13] **Now the captain said to Me:** “Lord and Master, look, the people down there around the hill do not know what they should do now and what they should think of You. Would it not be time to send one of my men down to give them some explanation?”

[14] **I said:** “Just leave that for the moment. I will first perform another sign, and then we will return to the inn. Then these people will also return to their families in the city and relate to them very zealously what they have heard and seen. Through that, they will really think, seek and guess among each other, and then it will be the time to gradually show them who the One was to whom the elements obey.

[15] **But now I want to make the very gloomy morning completely clear, and the nature spirits who are still active here and there, I will let them rest, for they really have been freed enough up to now.”**

[16] **On this, I commanded the vapors on the ground and the dense clouds in the air to disappear and to let the sun shine and glow.**


[17] **And immediately happened what I commanded. At once it became a very beautiful and sunny morning, and a clear view of the whole environment could be enjoyed.**

[18] **But out of the cracks and ridges of the earth’s surface that were formed at night, flames were still shooting up – although at a rather far distance from us – that, despite the clear morning, were not so pleasant to the surprised gentiles down the hill.**

[19] **A little half hour later I commanded also these fire spirits to go entirely to rest, and they extinguished, and no flame could be seen anymore shooting out from the earth’s surface, no matter in which direction the people were looking, not close by, neither**

in the distance. Also the wind was lying down, and as far as the eye could see, the earth's surface was completely cleaned up.

#### 64. THE RETURN TO THE INN

OW they were really surprised, and the gentiles down the hill asked each other who and what I was, where I came from and what My relationship was with the captain since I did not wear Roman clothing.

[2] Some who were more acquainted with the theosophy of the Jews than their neighbors thought that I was a prophet, for these kinds of half divine men did also such things. Others thought that I was a great magician who was dressed like a Jew. Still others contradicted that because they did not see any magician signs and no magic wand in My hands. And still others thought that I was a demigod in human form who also revealed himself to the always strictly righteous captain, and now, in order to increase his credibility, I did these signs that no man can do.

[3] And so, among these people were still a lot of other opinions about Me, but not one of them dared to come upon the hill to us to ask someone who I was. But we stood up from our somewhat formless stone seats and prepared to return to the inn.

[4] When the gentiles saw this, who were still around the hill and guessing about everything, they were seized by fear for Me, and they quickly went before us to the city and went also immediately into their houses where their families were already waiting for them. One can imagine that they could hardly stop asking questions and explaining.

[5] When the mentioned gentiles were in the city, we also left the hill and went slowly to our inn where the already prepared morning meal was waiting for us.

[6] When we came into the city, we met the pagan priests who were already very busy telling the people that it was only thanks to them that the city had been spared from destruction. The day that looked really terrifying in the morning and full of

threatening danger had suddenly changed into a beautiful day, cheerful for every human mind, by the gods who came into a milder mood by their priestly, secret prayers and promises. And therefore, the inhabitants of this and also of the other cities must in return make effort with all zeal and without delay to provide the temple with abundant offerings.

[7] Also the 2 Jewish priests did not make less effort to work on the Jews in their synagogue. But neither the gentiles nor the Jews showed a great willingness to do what the priests wanted from them.

[8] We still kept watching before the inn for a while to see what the priests and the people were doing, and **the 2 neighbors of our innkeeper** said: “Were we not right when we said just a while ago what the priests – who do not have any faith themselves – would do when the day would become so clear that no afterstorm was to be feared? The day became completely clear in a twinkling of an eye by the Galilean who is unmistakably gifted with divine power, and we barely entered the city when we met the priests who are busy with the most selfish activities while they were so terribly fearful during the storm last night and were without any faith and trust in divine help.

[9] If actually those who on this Earth want to be the representatives of the gods – whether of several gods or only of the one, only true God, that is for the moment not important – are the first to leave and run away during a danger in which they should show that they are the strongest in faith, how can any somehow clearly thinking person during a nice and calm weather attach any credibility to their words?

[10] We can very clearly see now that no one else but only the priests, by their very great lust for power and greediness, have inevitably taken away every true faith and every living trust in a God who controls everything and who is almighty.

[11] But once the poor people have lost all faith and trust, who will then lift them up again to the true faith and the ancient trust

in a supernatural divine help?

[12] This is not easy for people, or totally impossible. But then the One, or the many gods, should take up the work, for only through great signs can totally blind people be brought back to the faith and trust in the help of a divine Being.

[13] Only now we understand clearly why you did not let you drive out last night of the inn by any fright or any fear of danger, for when you accommodate someone in your house to whom all elements obey in an instant because He is greatly filled with divine power and might, it is easy to believe and to trust. But in whom did we have to believe and trust? In our half broken statues of stone that represent god? In the protecting spirits of our house or in the priests who by their great fright and fear were the first to run away from their houses and temples and looked for protection on the square and who would not go back in a temple for any price?

[14] So we also looked for protection in the open because our representatives of the gods also preferred to look in the nature where protection can be more easily found.

[15] But this great Master in true divine power and wisdom should show these shouting priests who is the Master. Then our true faith and trust in the one, only true and living God will soon be different. Also the 2 Jewish priests would soon think differently and maybe return to the old faith of the first fathers.”

[16] Now I said to the 2 neighbors: “Go now with your family to our inn and partake of the morning meal with us. And let those priests lament, for they will receive little from the rich of the abundant offerings they ask, and the poor who were with us around the hill will be able to explain how the One looked like to whom the whole nature of the Earth obeyed, and then there will still be time enough to make an end to their practices.”

[17] The 2 neighbors were very satisfied with that. They called their families, went with us to the inn and partook with us in a good mood and very cheerful of the abundant and well-prepared morning meal.

## 65. THE CAPTAIN ASKS HOW HE SHOULD HANDLE THE PRIESTS



WHEN the good wine had made their tongues looser, they were all the more in the mood to talk, and they revealed things about which even My disciples were very surprised.

[2] While the 2 were discussing about very good subjects, also one of the 2 rabbis came to us in the dining hall to strongly show our innkeeper that also he, as Jew, should bring the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob an offering because the pious prayer of His 2 servants in this old city of Golan persuaded Him to protect all his possessions from destruction.

[3] This representation of things by the rabbi made one of the two neighbors simply burst out from vexation, and so he quickly rose from his chair, went to the brutal rabbi and said (**a neighbor of the innkeeper**): “Friend, did not one of your old wise men or prophets at some occasion predict that the time will come when no more lying or lazy priests will be tolerated?”

[4] Are you really not ashamed as priest to appear with a very great lie before us men who are devoted to the truth?

[5] When and where did you pray to your God to spare the possessions of this honorable neighbor and friend of mine?

[6] Look, we saw you and your colleague, who is precisely like you, in full fear and fright on the big square at night, lamenting and with chattering teeth, and you both sought out a place that seemed the safest to you.

[7] Why did you actually not stay in your synagogue of which you yourself say that God exalts your prayers from there? Did you pray for the well being of your people at the strong wall at the square?

[8] O, we know you as clear and well as our own idol worshippers, and *we* say: we do not want to have anything to do with you anymore. Go away, otherwise a very mighty One among us may force you to go away.”

[9] Now the rabbi saw the captain, said no more word and left our inn quickly.

[10] On this, **the neighbor** said: “All praise to the one, only true God of the true Jews, for we are rid of one of the dirtiest atheists.”

[11] **The captain** said: “Yes, yes, he ran away like a thief, and his colleague will avoid<sup>1</sup> to visit us, but our pagan priests who will have heard by now that I am staying here, will probably not avoid to visit me. If they come, how must I as a Roman captain behave? For in the name of the emperor I must be the protector of the priests, but how must I do that, now that I have come to know the one, true, living God, *that I* love Him above all and despise and hate our polytheism and their priests above all, which is full of errors and shameful deceit?”

[12] **I** said: “Not so My friend. Look, also the priests of your gods – who of course actually never existed, but only originated from the fantasy of men who wanted to rule over their fellowmen – have to be considered in this time to be much less guilty of the existence of dark paganism than those who preached paganism in the beginning when men were still fully believing in the one, true God, and were for this reason converting more extensively and more people through false signs.

[13] They do not believe in their gods themselves but they nevertheless keep the people into the old superstition, in the first place to earn their bread with the people, in the second place because they do not possess the truth, and in the third place because they are also compelled to do so because of the state laws and also because of their oath that they gave to a supreme priest on the name Pantheon<sup>2</sup> in which all your gods are included.

[14] But if this is how your priests are, you surely will also

---

<sup>1</sup> “avoid” has been added.

<sup>2</sup> Greek for: (temple for) all the gods.


perceive that they are not so much to be hated but to be pitied. So try to bring them also on the way of the truth. And when they walk upon it, take care that they will receive another work. Because it is the same for the emperor, whether one is Jew or gentile, as long as he will give him his due. And so you should not be worried for what concerns the emperor that he might perhaps call you to account because of a few priests of Zeus and Apollo who turned to the true Judaism that lives in God.

[15] Besides, through My doing, the most important rulers in this part of the world have turned to the living Judaism in their heart for already many years. Like the supreme governor Cyrenius, his youngest brother Cornelius, the statesman Agricola in Rome, and several men at his side – although only since half a year and a little longer.

[16] Since the men that I mentioned now, and still many others, did not yet have to endure hard measures from the emperor, you all the less will have to fear it, because I assure you of My special protection if you will stay loyal to Me. And I have also given you the power to heal the sick and free the possessed of their tormenting spirits in My name. And you do not need anything more at this time.”

[17] When **the captain** heard this from Me, he became very happy from joy in his heart and said: “Lord of my existence and life, all glory, all honor and all thanks go to You only for such great mercy that was never deserved by me. We will all execute Your will – like Your angels in Heaven are doing – and Your holy name will always be highly glorified and praised.”

## 66. THE IMPORTANCE OF LOVE

 THESE words of the captain made **the 2 neighbors** extremely surprised, and they said to the captain: “High commander in the place of the great emperor, now we also thank you and our righteous neighbor, because you confirmed in us what we already secretly thought outside on the

hill but did not dare to say aloud. This Man, whom we called a Galilean because of His clothing, is the one, only true God, not only of the Jews but of all men and all creatures. To Him only are subdued all mights and powers of the Earth. And the moon, the sun and all the stars glorify and praise His eternal wisdom and might. He is in Himself the eternal first Spirit, and God showed Himself for the sake of the blind people on this Earth as a perfect human being to show us that He, as the only One from eternity, is the Lord over everything that contains the Earth and the Heavens, which are His work, just like this Earth.

[2] O, what are we now endlessly happy that we can see and recognize Him now in our form. Our priests may come now, then we will show them their Zeus.”

[3] Then the 2 neighbors fell before Me on their knees and wanted to worship Me, but I let them stand up and listen to My words, which they did. And until midday I instructed them about My will and explained to them many other things. And they became My servants.

[4] After I well instructed the 2 neighbors of our innkeeper about everything that was at that present time necessary for the salvation of their soul, and which they also well understood, they thanked Me with all their heart. And **the one, who was the better speaker, said:** “Truly, with such instruction about God, whose fullness lives in You, o Lord and Master, and about the destiny of men on this Earth, whose true form and characteristics You very clearly described to us, not one of the great signs that You performed here would have been necessary. And we recognized You only at Your Word, for we very soon became aware in ourselves that each one of Your words are alive. And as a fire from the Heavens they flowed through everything that was dead in us and awakened them to life. And this was much more convincing to us than the signs, although extraordinary and exceptional, but which nevertheless showed a certain similarity with the signs that are performed by many magicians and priests with the help of completely natural means



which are well known to us, and which always harmed the free will and the reason of men more than it ever was beneficial, no matter where or when.

[5] But still we thank You, o Lord and Master, also for the great signs that You have performed here, and also for the beautiful, clear day that we have received through Your divine power, because the signs that You performed here will only have a permanent good effect in the future when we will work on our very blind people, whether they are superstitious or stoics who reject every belief.

[6] There are enough witnesses here, and we have now also the courage to fight against all the powers of the night and darkness among the people and to conquer in Your name. And You, o Lord and Master, to whom all might and powers of all the Heavens and this Earth are subdued, will certainly not forsake us during the battle for the living truth that we heard from Your holy mouth.”

[7] **I said:** “Of this you can be completely sure. And now I give also to you, who are My good friends now, the power to heal the sick in My name through the laying on of your hands, no matter of what kind of sickness they may suffer, and drive out evil spirits from those who are possessed. And being thus equipped by Me, you can fight against the lie and the black deceit, but always carefully and wisely, and then the palm of victory will not be left behind.

[8] But all the things that you do and will do in My name, you should do out of love in order to awaken and to bring alive the love in the heart of those whom you won for My Kingdom.

[9] Once the love is strong in their hearts and full of life, and they want to show you love in return, allow it with a glad heart, for only the mighty love and the love in return will bring each other to life and will awaken a perfect new life.

[10] But in the beginning, since you are the first who are filled with the true love from Me, you only should begin to work with that love. For if someone wants to take a good woman, striving

for the hand of a young woman, and goes to her parents to express his wish, but does not show any love for the young woman neither for the parents, but only takes immediately information about the extent and value of her treasures, will he ever win the love of the young woman and her parents? I think that he hardly will reach the desired goal by that because the one who does not have love will also difficultly find a love in return. But the one who searches with all love for a love in return will also find it. And once he has found it, he should not turn away from it when it actually comes joyfully to him.

[11] Look at Me, and take you all an example on Me. I came here uncalled out of pure love for you, and have also immediately shown you all love without asking anything in return, but since you recognized Me, and are now coming to Me with all love, I accept that love from you with a joyful heart, and I do not despise to eat and drink with My disciples at your table. If I would not do that, would that make your heart joyful? Certainly not. Thus, show first love to the people without asking anything in return, and if the people in turn come to you with all love, accept from them what they offer you, but always with measure.

[12] If you will act like that, you largely will soon have spread My Kingdom on this Earth among the people and will not have to suffer any need.

[13] As pride, anger, envy, stinginess, greed, and more of such sins, stir up the same with other people, so will true, unselfish love stir up itself with other people. Thus, do everything out of love, then you will by that sow the seed of love in the hearts of other people, and that will soon become here, for them and for you, a blissful harvest, and even more on the other side, in the other, eternal life of the soul, by My Spirit of love in him.”

[14] They all understood these words of Mine very well, and they promised to execute them in the spirit of the full truth.

## 67. THE PAGAN PRIESTS DEFEND THEIR BEHAVIOR ON THE STORMY NIGHT



WHILE they were very cheerfully talking with each other about this teaching of Mine, 2 of the more important pagan priests entered our inn to greet the captain, whose presence they heard from those poorer people who assembled that morning around our hill. But they especially came to our inn to come to know the Man in Galilean clothing, for they had heard from the poorer people that on that hazy morning the mighty elements obeyed His word and will.

[2] When they entered the dining hall, they immediately bowed deeply before the captain and said (**the priests**): “Forgive us, high commander in the name of the great and mighty emperor by the almightiness of the gods and their most important servants among men whom they choose and appointed by their invisible active will. If you have for us also a new command from the great city of Rome, of the emperor and the gods, be so merciful to make it known to us in the manner and the time which seems most suitable to you, so that we can comply with it.”

[3] **The captain said**: “This time I do not have a new command, not for you, neither for the people, for our laws are established, and up to now none were added. But something came to my ears about you that does not make me happy.

[4] Why do you deceive and lie to the people and want to extort offerings from them for your own physical well being, because you pretend that it is only thanks to you that the angered gods did not change this city and the whole environment into a desert and that the hazy and still ominous morning was suddenly changed into a clear day. You very bluntly announce such things to the people who saw that you were the first to run out of your temples and houses during the storm and earthquake, and saw you looking for protection in the open air. Are you thus establishing the faith of the people or are you destroying it?

[5] If the people can see nothing but the greatest fright, fear and a complete lack of trust and faith with the priests who always let themselves be honored and glorified as loyal servants and friends of the gods, and who should be the most brave and courageous, how can they, once the danger is over, still believe any of the words of such priests – as you have shown yourselves already several times as they say – while the people know very well out of experience that they themselves do not even possess a spark of faith and trust in a higher divine power? And how can such priests stand before the people afterwards and lie to them in a rough and bold manner?”

[6] **On this, one of the 2 pagan priests said:** “Forgive me, high commander, but in this sphere of ours you did not give a completely right judgment. It is indeed true that on many dangerous situations a priest should always show to the wavering people the greatest courage and a great firm trust in the possible help of the highest gods in order to inspire them to have courage and to awaken faith and a firm trust in their mind, but at extremely dangerous occasions also the priest should show the people that he fears the gods when they reveal their anger by the terrible raging of the elements.

[7] Although a priest is a mediator between the gods and men, but he is no Lord as the immortal gods, and this he will never be, for also a priest must die, just like any other human being, and thus he also should fear the gods.

[8] As long as the gods are clearly showing the people that they exist and are almighty, through lightnings, thunder, strong winds, terrible rains, hail, snow and heavy cold weather at unusual times that damage the fruits of the Earth, then a priest can still stand with a greater courage before the people that became fearful, comfort and strengthen them, and awaken and establish faith and trust in them. But sometimes the gods reach with their power to the foundations of the Earth, shake it to and fro and threaten then to turn everything upside down – and then, also the faith of a priest has the right to shake together with the

surface of the Earth.

[9] Although he can try to make the gods milder through prayers and suitable promises, he can show at the same time that he also is only a weak human being and who always must fear the gods.

[10] Look, high commander, since this is how things are, we really did nothing wrong during that night of true terror to indeed show the people our justified fear for the almightiness of the gods. But since the angered gods became milder again by our priests because of the promises that were made to them, it is now the time to inform the people what they should do, together with us, to entirely fulfill the promises that we priests faithfully made to the gods, without reluctance or punishable neglect, for otherwise, at a future occasion, by which the gods could even be more angered, we hardly can hope for any mildness. For only 7 times do the gods have patience with the most important weaknesses of men. The 8<sup>th</sup> time they hardly will show anymore indulgence or patience.

[11] And because we emphatically made it known now to the people, our actions are certainly good and just regarding the gods and those of the people who still possess some faith and a good will. And it cannot be said that by that we made the people's faith and trust in the gods weaker.

[12] I think, high commander, that with this short explanation I have sufficiently justified our behavior. I have said."

## 68. THE CAPTAIN INSTRUCTS THE PRIESTS ABOUT THE USELESSNESS OF PAGAN WORSHIP



**IN that, the captain said:** "Although you have spoken very well now, and your words were very intelligent, but for me they only have very little value because their content and the truth in yourself are standing far away from each other. Because look, firstly you yourself do not even have a little spark of faith and trust in the gods, which I could very clearly prove to you as well as to all your colleagues from my

experience. And since you yourself have no faith at all in a god, your speech is for me nothing else but a useless bragging of words without any value.

[2] And I do not say this to you with the purpose of punishing you and your colleagues for your behavior, but I want to make it clear to you that you will not accomplish anything that is good with all your apparent wise shouting to the people, of which the better part thoroughly perceived your intentions already for a long time. Especially in this time when the clearest truth about the existence of an only true God, about the manner in which one should worship Him and about the very obvious destiny of man is spreading very clearly among the Jews. And a lot of the better gentiles are already turning to the new faith of the Jews and found therein real comfort and a very good and firmly established reassurance.

[3] You certainly must also have heard about it. But then why did you not yet try to prove it for yourselves? And why do you stubbornly persist trying to make the people believe what you never believed yourselves, but still want to convince the people with your empty shouting?

[4] If you are convinced in yourselves that our gods do not mean anything and you do not believe in them, then search first for the truth yourselves. And when you have found it, do not withhold it from the people who are only thirsting for the full truth. Then you surely will be more useful to the people and to the state than with your empty shouting.

[5] Make from the idol temples houses to accommodate the poor and the sick, and do also not turn your back on the foreigners. Then you will find the true, living mercy from the one, only true God, who will certainly be more useful to you than all your dead earthly treasures that you extorted from the people through your insane shouting at occasions like tonight.”

[6] **On this, the pagan priest said:** “High commander, now you have completely spoken the truth, and this is precisely how things are with us. But to whom should we turn to find that

living truth that will be more useful to us and the people than the possession of all the treasures of the whole Earth? And when we have found the truth and will have instructed and converted the people according to that truth, then what must we answer our supreme priests if they would call us to account for the fact that we turn the people away from that which they are teaching and what they want to have, and convert them to the pure Judaism?”

[7] **The captain said:** “To whom you should turn in order to come to know the pure, living truth and the one, only true God and thus also His will, I can show you the very shortest way to that.

[8] Look, here at my right sits the Man who can show you the pure truth in all its fullness, and He is also in Himself the One to who obey all the powers and might of Heaven and Earth. If you acknowledge that and will really understand it, it will become clear to you by itself what you will have to say to those who will ask you why you turned to the true Judaism with the people who were entrusted to you.

[9] We Romans are very tolerant what concerns the various religions, and we do not refuse anyone the manner in which he imagines some deity, believes in it and trust upon it. You know that as well as I do, for although the Romans have conquered many nations in Asia, Africa and Europe and made them subordinates of Rome, they nevertheless always left the teaching concerning the gods of those people untouched. And they also erected temples in Rome for the strange gods. So in this respect, Rome is tolerant and you have nothing to fear from that, and even less here in Asia since the Judaism is the ruling religion here.

[10] I have shown you now the way to the pure, living truth, and you may now do what you want.”

## 69. THE PRIESTS ARE QUESTIONED BY THEIR COLLEAGUES



**A**FTER these words of the captain, the 2 priests looked at Me from head to toe, and **one of them** asked Me: “Who are You actually, since our commander gave a testimony about You that one can truly only give to God? Speak about Yourself, and we will believe You, whatever You say.

[2] Are You perhaps the One about who our poor people told us outside, who commanded the winds, the clouds and the fire from the hill Talba and that they obeyed Him?”

[3] **I** said: “Yes, I am the One indeed. The testimony of the captain is true. Comply with it. All the rest that you and your people will need, you will hear from this innkeeper and his 2 neighbors.

[4] If you will act upon it in full faith, you will awaken the eternal life in yourself and you will keep it then also forever. For I Myself – although in your eyes I am a Son of man – am the Way, the Truth and the eternal Life. Whoever believes in Me and acts completely according to My teaching, will, what concerns his soul, live eternally, even if he, for what concerns his body, would die many times.

[5] Concerning My teaching – which is very short and easy to understand for everyone – you will hear from those whom I indicated to you. And now you can go back to your colleagues outside and tell them what you have heard. They should not extort the people anymore to appease non-existent gods, for if they will continue with that I will release once more the powers of the Earth, and then they will see how they will fare.”

[6] When the 2 pagan priests heard this from Me, they said no more word but bowed deeply before Me and before the captain and went quickly outside on the large road to their colleagues who were still telling all kinds of stories to the people about the gods, and in this way they received many coins.

[7] When the 2 came outside, their colleagues saw them, went to



them and asked very curiously what they were able to achieve with the captain and what I was all about.

[8] **But the 2 said:** “You, our dear friends, listen. The matter is of the greatest importance, and later in our house we will extensively speak about it, but here on the street is not the place to talk about such things.

[9] But the Man, of who the poor told us that all might, powers and elements of the Earth obey Him, seems to be more than only a human being. And He very decisively told us that we should immediately stop to collect expiatory offerings for the gods that are nothing, otherwise we will have to endure from Him something that is still worse than what we had to endure tonight. So let us immediately stop collecting and go to our stronghold. There we will deliberate what we should do further. Because the matter of that exceptional Man must be really very important, otherwise our captain, who puts everything to the test, would not be so devoted to Him and give a testimony to us that one can only give about someone that is very clearly recognized as God. But let us not talk further about this here.”

[10] **These words of the 2 priests were very touching to all of them. They stopped collecting and went to their stronghold. And a few of the more important citizens went with them with great expectation.**

[11] **When they arrived in the stronghold that was adorned with all kinds of idol statues, one of the two, who was with Me in the inn, climbed in the preacher’s chair and said:** “Now be so kind to hear me. I will tell you as brief as possible what I have heard in the Jewish inn from our wise captain and then mainly from that exceptional Man, and what we all should take at heart, because a human being to whom all might and powers of the Heavens and the Earth obey, is certainly more, greater and more respectable than all our gods of who no one can say with any certainty that they ever existed or are now really existing, except in the temples that are made by human hands.

[12] No one has ever experienced that one of our many gods has


performed a real miracle. That which was done in front of the blind people by calling up some god, was not done by the god that was called upon, but was – as we well know – only done by a priest who was skilled in the art of magic with the means that were at his disposal. Without such means no one has ever – as far as we know – performed a miracle, not even the Pontifex Maximus<sup>1</sup> in Rome.

[13] But if that Man, about whom I am speaking, commands without any tangible means, only by His word and by His will, all the powers of the Heavens and the Earth, and they obey Him, then such a Man is entirely the only true God. Then everything what we indicate with the word ‘god’ is nothing else but a making of the human fantasy that from now on should be no more accepted as really existent by any clearly thinking and truth-seeking person.

[14] This is a necessary introduction of what I have promised to say and to tell you. But before I tell you what I heard from the captain and then from that God-Man, maybe you wish to say what you think about this God-Man.”

[15] **They all said:** “Continue your speech and tell us what you heard from the captain and especially from the God-Man, because of all the things whereof you are convinced that it is the full truth, we also are convinced that it is the full and complete truth. So come to the main point. We will listen to you with the greatest attention.”

## 70. THE CONCLUSION OF THE PRIEST

HEN the speaker, as he promised, told in detail of what he heard from the captain and from Me. And they were all extremely surprised of what he said. And when the speaker related precisely about all the things he heard in the inn and also about what he discussed with the captain and with Me,

---

<sup>1</sup> Supreme priest in Rome who was responsible for the religious matters in the kingdom.

**they all said:** “If this is so, then we have of course no other choice than to believe that the God-Man is truly a living God, and no other being can be accepted or honored next to Him. And when we hear His teaching, and by that also His will from the mouth of the captain or from the mouth of another one who knows about it, we will make it our law of life and will strictly act according to it.

[2] And we will forever do away with our teaching about the gods and the myths, as well as the statues and images. And we also will instruct our children in the new teaching, but your priests will mainly take care that everyone will hear this new teaching, understand it well and strictly observe it for what concerns the part of the law.

[3] But now it is time for all of us to go to the God-Man and bring Him our first and as high as possible worship that only belongs to Him, and with that, also our thanks for the undeserved mercy that He gave us by coming to us and to visibly making Himself known to us.”

[4] **They all agreed with that proposal. They left the stronghold of the priests, went to our inn and wanted to enter immediately.**

[5] **Since the captain – as well as all those who were in the inn – heard from Me what had been discussed in the stronghold of the priests, he asked Me if those who arrived should be allowed to enter the inn where the space was limited, or that it should be made clear to them to wait outside until I wanted to go out to meet them.**

[6] **But I said:** “Let all those who are burdened and loaded with all kinds of darkness come to Me, then I will revive them all. Those who want to come to Me, for them the door will be opened, and they will find the One in Me whom they sought in vain for so long and whom with all their worldly wisdom could not find. Where I am, there is also room for those who love Me and seek Me.”

[7] **When the captain heard this from Me, he himself went to the door and opened it, as those who arrived were waiting at the**

door, deliberating among themselves who of them would be the first to enter, for when the company in question arrived at the inn with the intention to enter, a little fear came over them, and none of them dared to open the door first.

[8] But when the captain himself opened the door, those who arrived bowed down before him, and the 2 priests asked him if they could come in to show honor and thanks to Me for the mercy that I came also to them in this old and very remote city and let Myself be recognized by the blind people as the one, only true God.

[9] **The captain** said: “The Lord is pleased with you because He surely knows what decision you all have taken in the stronghold, and so you can now enter the inn.”

[10] After this answer of the captain they all walked with the deepest respect into the dining hall, bowed very deeply before Me and the 2 priests gave Me a well-phrased speech and ended it with the gratitude which they all thought they owed Me and which they wanted to give Me.

[11] When they had finished their speech, I stood up, blessed them and said: “Happy all those who come to Me and recognize Me as you now. For the one who recognizes Me, has thereto already received the light from Me, so that He can recognize Me and then actively believe in Me.

[12] This light is with you now only a little flame in your soul. Only after you have received My teaching and by that also My will, and will act and live according to it, your light, which is now only little, will become like a sun, and only then you will come to the full truth of life and existence and awaken the eternal life in yourselves.

[13] The innkeeper here will give you the teaching that he received from Me, and his 2 neighbors and his personnel will be real witnesses for you, and they will tell you many things which you do not know yet. Once you will know them you will receive complete insight about Me.

[14] But go now to sit at a table and take some bread and wine

and strengthen your limbs, after which we still will discuss and settle a few things with each other.”

[15] Then the pagan priests, with a few prominent citizens, went to sit at a free table. Bread and wine were immediately offered to them and they ate and drank very cheerfully, for they were already hungry and thirsty.

## 71. THE GRATITUDE OF THE PRIESTS



AFTER the wine had made their tongues more movable they talked among each other about all kinds of known wise men from ancient times and gave their opinion. Once they had this *opinion*, then again they had another opinion. They finally came also to *the subject* of the Jewish wise men and prophets, and the first priest knew a lot about Moses and Isaiah whom he considered to be the 2 greatest wise men of the Jews. But he did not like the often too concealed language, thinking that it was generally a mistake of most of the old wise men that they rarely spoke and wrote clearly and openly to the people, and that precisely for that reason the people turned to many wrong ideas which could never have started with a clear and unconcealed manner of speaking.

[2] While they were still discussing among each other, I gave a sign to James the elder to give them a correct clarification since they had a wrong opinion about this, for this disciple was very well acquainted with, and well understood the correspondences between the spiritual and natural things.

[3] Therefore he went to the priests of the gentiles, greeted them and explained to them the reason why Moses and also the other wise men and prophets only spoke and wrote in this way and could not have spoken and written differently.

[4] The priests and also the citizens understood this well and quickly. They praised the disciple for this and gave Me the honor and sincere thanks, for I had given also to a human being such deep insight in purely godly things.

[5] Then the disciple returned to his place, and the opinion of the pagan priests and the citizens who were with them, about the manner of speaking and writing of the old wise men was now completely different. And they put forward many good things, about which also our captain was very surprised. He went to them, spoke with them and told them openly also a few things he knew about Me, about which the pagan priests and present citizens showed their great joy.

[6] The captain gave also as clearly as possible and in brief some specifications about the true form of the Earth, the nature of its movement and its size, as well as of the moon, the sun, the planets and the rest of the stars. And those who were instructed in this manner were very joyful about it.

[7] **One of them said:** “If this is the case and not otherwise, then in how many errors are countless people still deeply buried, and when will it, also in this respect, become clear and bright to them?”

[8] **The captain said:** “Friends, we will leave this only to the Lord, for He only knows best in which time He has to give a greater light in all things to a nation. But from now on, the correct, bright light, according to His will, will be very quickly spread among the people who are of good will. And with this work we ourselves will not keep our hands lazy.”

[9] **They all said:** “That we will never do, because now we truthfully know what we have to do, and for who and why.

[10] O that long spiritual night that kept our patriarchs so long captive with iron shackles, and now also us. All honor, all glory and all thanks to the Lord, the only true God without beginning or end, in who all mights and powers are united, for He humiliated Himself so deeply to envelop Himself in a body of flesh and blood to deliver us from the old night of death. For someone who lives in the greatest error and complete spiritual blindness about all the things and phenomena that surround him, is finally, seen in the right perspective, in a much worse condition than no matter what kind of animal, and could be considered as good

as dead.

[11] Only after being awakened in the spirit will he be alive, and will he, with his pure knowledge of God and love for Him, stand before Him, highly exalted above all other material creatures.

[12] Our life was up to now only an idle dream. Although the dreamer may feel a confused existence, but he cannot have any true awareness, and therefore cannot perceive or understand anything truthfully.

[13] Our dreamy condition has now come to an end by the mercy of the Lord. We are awake and are now living in reality. And how blissful life is wherein one comes to full awareness of being really, truly alive, and that he can also not lose life anymore if he stays with the right love in the One who He is eternally the first life of all life Himself, without beginning or end. O, how happy are we already feeling now in the full presence of God, the eternal Lord over all things. And although the heaviness and the judgment of our body is still pressing upon us, how endlessly happy will we feel when the Lord will soon also free us from that burden.

[14] But first we must awaken as many as possible of our poor fellow brethren from their deadly sleep and idol dream to the life of the spirit, for that which has made us so happy must, by our efforts in the future, make many thousand times thousands of people happy.”

[15] After this good speech, the speaker himself was completely moved and could no more speak because of his tears.

## 72. HOW TRUE DISCIPLES OF THE LORD SHOULD BEHAVE



OW also I stood up from My chair, walked with a friendly face to the pagan priests and the citizens of this city and said: “Listen, if you will in My name, with the right unselfish neighborly love, spread My light and Kingdom among your brothers and sisters who are still languishing in deep darkness, you yourselves will be more and more enlightened and your life will become more and more perfected, and only from then on things will be revealed to you of which you have and also cannot have any idea yet.

[2] Stay from now on faithful to this intention, and do not let it be pushed aside by the enticements of this world. Then you will stay in Me and I in you.

[3] Try first to conquer the world within yourselves, then it will also be easier for you to conquer it in your brothers. No one can give his fellowman something which he does not first possess himself. If someone wants to awaken love in his brother he must come to him with love, and if someone wants to generate humility in his fellowman he must come to him with humility. In this way, meekness will in turn generate meekness, patience patience, goodness goodness, and mercy mercy.

[4] Take you all an example on Me. I am the Lord over everything in Heaven and on Earth. In Me is all might, rulership and power, and nevertheless, with all My heart I am full of love, humility, meekness, patience, goodness and mercy. Let all of you be the same, then one will clearly see that you are truly My disciples.

[5] Love one another mutually as brothers, and do what is good for each other. Let no one exalt himself above another, wanting to be the first, for I alone am the Lord. You all are only brothers. In My Kingdom only he will be the first who is the least and always willing to serve his brothers in all that is good and true.

[6] In Hell, on this side and on the other side – the kingdom of



the devils and all malicious spirits – the haughtiest, proudest, greediest and most dominant spirit is the first and a torment for the lowly and the small ones. They are eager to keep the others more or less in some kind of humility, obedience and submissiveness. But in My Kingdom it is not so, but it is as I have just told you.

[7] Look at the big ones of this world, sitting on their thrones and ruling over the nations. Who is the one that can near them except with great submissiveness? If someone would dare to near a ruler with an authoritative attitude, what would be his fate?

[8] Look, such is also the order in Hell. But among yourselves, My disciples, it should not be so, but only as I have shown you.

[9] The big ones of the world want to be begged a long time before they would do a good deed for someone, as if it is an exceptional mercy, but you should not want your fellowmen to beg you first before doing a good deed for them, for you can ask God, the true Lord and Father of eternity, for all good things, and you will receive them, but brothers among each other should not want to be begged first.

[10] And if a humble, poor brother asks something from his richer brother, the richer one should not withhold what the poor one requested from him to do, for the one hardheartedness will awaken the other, and this is not My Kingdom.

[11] What good would it be for man if he would say and confess in himself: ‘Lord, Lord, God of Heaven and Earth, I believe without doubting that You are the only, eternal, only true, all-wise and almighty Creator of all material and spiritual worlds, and all that lives, thinks and wills, lives, thinks and wills only from You.’

[12] I say to you that this would not be useful for the true salvation of anyone’s soul. Such faith is only beneficial for someone’s soul if he will joyfully do what I advised him to do, because someone who kindly and willingly does My will, will do tenfold more with the little that he can do than the one who

wants to be begged a long time and who then praises himself about the deed of love he did for his fellowman and boast about it.

[13] Do as you have heard now from My mouth, only by that it will become really clear in you that My words are truly God's words. By that you will awaken My Spirit in you and will guide you into all the wisdom of the Heavens, will cleanse you for eternal life and make you true children of God.

[14] And now you know enough for the time being to attain to the eternal life of your soul. You will hear more about this – as already said to you – from this innkeeper and his 2 neighbors, and only after that *you will hear* that which is most perfect by My Spirit of love in you. Did you all understand this well?"

## THE LORD IN APHEK

### 73. DEPARTURE TO APHEK



**HE speaker said:** “O Lord and Master of eternity, we all understood it very well, because You spoke to us in a pure, well understandable language, but we also realize that we are still very far away from the real goal of life and that we still will have many a battle with ourselves and with the other people of this world.”

[2] **I said:** “Your words are very correct and just, because for the sake of My name you will have to endure many persecutions and slander of the world. But do then not loose your patience and courage, and fight with all love and meekness against the enemies of the truth and of the light from the Heavens, then you will acquire the crown of victory.

[3] **Only,** do not give up the real love in your heart, for it endures everything and will finally conquer everything. If you will act and walk in love together with Me, you will be able to walk over snakes, salamanders and scorpions, and their poisonous bites will not be able to harm you. And when they will give you poison to drink, it will not make your bowels sick. And I, the Lord, say ‘amen’ on this, so it is and so it will remain for everyone who truly stays in My love.

[4] **But** the one who will also, besides My love, make eyes at the world from time to time, will also not be safe for all the damage of the worldly poison.

[5] **If** someone really loves Me and keeps My commandments that are light, I will come to him when he always very actively wishes and desires it in his heart, and I will reveal Myself to him and give all kinds of power and might to him to fight against all malicious spirits of the world and Hell, and then they will not be able to harm him. And now you know still better what you can expect from Me.

[6] **The** one who will not forsake Me, I also will not forsake,

and the one who will fight together with Me against the world and Hell, can also always be sure of victory.”

[7] When I had said that to the pagan priests, they all thanked Me with great enthusiasm in their heart for this teaching and the promise that was directly connected to it. They stood up from their seats and wanted to go to their stronghold to put everything in order there to proclaim My teaching and Me in a worthy manner to the gentiles.

[8] But I said to them: “Friends, for what you already want to do now, there still will largely be time enough tomorrow. Stay here for now and partake of the midday meal with us, and strengthen yourselves with that.

[9] I Myself will leave from here after the meal with My disciples and your captain, and then you can continue your conversation about Me with the innkeeper and his 2 neighbors, and prepare yourselves how you already some time tomorrow can talk about Me to the inhabitants of this city and its environment.”

[10] When the pagan priests and the several prominent citizens heard that from Me, they once more gave thanks for this proposal and went to sit at their table again, where the well-prepared food and a right quantity of bread and wine were immediately put on it, and soon also on the other tables. I also went to sit at our table again, and we all partook of the meal in a cheerful mood.

[11] Immediately after the meal I stood up with My disciples, as well as the captain with his daughter who was in the kitchen during the time that we spoke with the pagan priests, where she very actively participated with the preparation of the midday meal.

[12] The innkeeper brought once more his wife, his children and also his personnel to Me and asked for My blessing. And I blessed all those who were in the house, also the pagan priests and the citizens and of course also the 2 neighbors with their whole family for which they all thanked Me very emotionally.

[13] Then I said to the captain: “Now we will go to Aphek, but not along the main road but along a footpath in order not to cause a sensation with the inhabitants who have settled themselves along the road.”

[14] This was good to the captain, and in this manner we left for Golan and reached the mountain city Aphek towards the evening.

#### 74. WITH THE ROMAN INNKEEPER IN APHEK



THE way from Golan to Aphek was rather difficult because we had to cross over a deep canyon that came out into the Jordan Valley, which took us a couple of hours.

[2] When we reached the mountain city Aphek towards the evening, **the captain asked Me**: “Lord and Master, where will we actually take accommodation for the night in this city? For as far as I know, this city has no Jewish inn at all, and furthermore there are also no Jewish citizens. Maybe a few Jewish housekeepers can be found here, but, as already said, no Jewish residents. I also have a well-arranged stronghold house in this city. If this is satisfactory to You, would You then not like to sleep tonight in that stronghold?”

[3] I said: “It is true that you have a stronghold, and it is provided with all kinds of resting beds, tables, benches and chairs, but your provision rooms are empty, and you also have no wine, no bread and no salt. But we are tired, especially the already old disciples – except a few who are about as old as I am – and they all should be strengthened with some food and drink. Will this be possible in your stronghold house?”

[4] I know what you think now and say within yourself: ‘Lord, with You everything is possible’. You are right in this, but we did not travel to this city to only rest and strengthen our tired limbs with miraculous food but to spread My Kingdom of life also here among the gentiles.

[5] Therefore, we will not take up residence into your stronghold house but we will search and also find accommodation in a Roman inn in the center of the city. Soon exceptional opportunities will arise there to spread My Kingdom among the gentiles.”

[6] When the captain heard this from Me, he immediately agreed with Me. He only made the remark that the innkeeper of the mentioned inn was a fervent gentile and that in his otherwise spacious house it was swarming with all kinds of idol statues, so much so that it rather should be called a real pantheon<sup>1</sup> instead of an inn. According to him there were also always several pagan priests present who want to impose themselves there.

[7] **I** said: “Look, precisely for this reason I choose that inn to stay for the night, and much will have to be worked on and accomplished there. So let us quickly go there, so that we can find accommodation.”

[8] Then we walked at a fast pace to the city and reached it before the closing time of the gate.

[9] When we arrived at the gate a Roman guard stopped us.

[10] But the captain came forward and demanded to speak to the one who commanded the guards. When he came, he recognized the captain immediately and ordered the guards to let us enter the city unhindered, because this was the demand of his captain.

[11] It was already quite dark when we arrived at the already mentioned inn, and the captain sent immediately a subordinate inside the inn to tell the innkeeper that he had to come to us right away, which also happened at once.

[12] When the innkeeper came to us, the captain asked him if he could give us a good accommodation.

[13] **The innkeeper** said: “I will give you what I have, but with the necessary service for the guests who came with you, high commander, it will look quite meager this time, because more than two thirds lay down sick. The great fear which they had to

---

<sup>1</sup> Greek for: (temple for) all the gods.

endure during the heavy storm last night and the earthquake, and the fear that such disaster could come back, made mostly my female personnel unsuitable for service.

[14] Although our priests made every effort to heal them, partly by speeches and partly by other means, but up to now everything was in vain. Time will still be the best doctor for my sick male and female servants.

[15] Only an hour ago we all dared to enter the house, because during half of the night we were outside from obvious fear that our houses would collapse, which easily could have happened, for when the piled up stones are beginning to terribly yelp and rattle it is the highest time to leave the house and go to the open air.

[16] I say to you in all submissiveness, high commander, that more than three quarters of this city are still outside now, and thus also several of my best male and female servants. Only an hour ago a few had the courage to enter with me and my family into the house. *So it looks* very bad with the already prepared food for today, *but I* still can serve you bread, salt and wine.

[17] Yes, high commander, great damage was done to me last night. But what can a weak and mortal human being do against the almightiness of the immortal gods and their elements.

[18] The priests – actually I should not say this – contributed a lot to the confusion of the day for the already desperate people by their preachings about penance and offerings. Although now at the end of the day they strung their harps with better snares, but this is to little avail because the people still think that the gods are too little reconciled and fear that this terrible calamity will come back.

[19] And also this is again the fault of our extremely greedy priests because they impress upon the people that the gods, once they are that furious because of the licentiousness of human beings and start to shake the foundations of the Earth, they cannot be softened anymore by little offerings. They give in for a while at the prayers of the priests, but if then the people pay

too little attention to the exhorting words of the servants who are inspired by the gods and will not immediately make haste to put almost all their possessions at the feet of the representatives of the gods – especially as much as possible gold and silver – then the gods will become even more furious than at first and will show the people their anger a hundred times more.

[20] Well now, our mountain city is mainly poor, and the people were by far not able to comply with the demands of the priests. That is why they fear that this great calamity will come back, and they cannot be brought back into the city for no matter what price.

[21] This is how things are with us. And you, high commander, will surely understand for what reason I can tonight only very scantily and meagerly serve you and your also certainly prominent company.

[22] So be so kind to enter my large house, and we will see what we still can do there.”

## 75. THE THOUGHTS OF THE INNKEEPER CONCERNING THE LORD



AFTER this very well-founded apologizing explanation of the innkeeper we entered the house and were immediately brought to the biggest and best decorated hall, which up to now had been illuminated very economically with only 1 lamp but was immediately better and sufficiently illuminated with several more lamps.

[2] Now the innkeeper noticed that we, the company of the captain, with the exception of his followers, were all Jews. So he asked the captain how he, who was otherwise not exactly known as a special friend of the Jews, was now traveling in their company, and moreover on foot. And how could he, a Roman innkeeper, who is an abomination to the Jews, be now capable to satisfy them?

[3] **The captain** said: “Do not worry about anything else now



except to bring us the right quantity of bread, salt and wine. After that, all the rest will become clear to you.

[4] Then the right and sufficient quantity of bread, salt and wine was served immediately. We went to sit at a big table that was completely made of stone, and we took some bread with salt and after that we drank the wine.

[5] The innkeeper noticed however that the daughter of the captain, when I wanted to drink, served Me at once the golden cup of wine that was offered to Me in Pella, and that I put it to My mouth and drank of it while all the other people present drank the wine from cups made of pottery.

[6] The innkeeper and also a couple of his servants looked at Me from a little distance from head to feet and did not know what they had to think of Me.

[7] **The innkeeper** said within himself: “There must be something great about Him, otherwise our captain would not give Him such honor.”

[8] When we all were sufficiently strengthened with bread and wine, **I** said to the innkeeper: “Look, innkeeper, a great salvation fell upon your house. Most of you Greeks and Romans are not unknowledgeable in the Scriptures of the Jews, and you know that the one, only true God, the Creator of Heaven and Earth and of all that was, is and will be, on it, in it and upon it, a Messiah was promised already since the first beginning of mankind by mouth of the prophets to the Jews, and through them also to you gentiles. And look, this promised Messiah am I, and I have come now only to you gentiles to establish and to spread the Kingdom of God among you.

[9] I was sent by God the Father from the Heavens, and the Father who sent Me, is the eternal Love, and My heart is its throne. It is in Me and I am in it. Therefore, in Me abides also all might, power and rulership over everything in Heaven and on Earth. I am the Life, the Light, the Way and the eternal Truth Myself.

[10] The one who believes in Me, who loves Me above all

things in the world and lives and acts according to My teaching, and who loves his fellowmen as himself, will receive from Me the eternal life and I will awaken him on the youngest day.

[11] You just looked at Me from head to feet and said within yourself: ‘Something great must be hidden behind that Man, otherwise our captain would not give Him such honor.’ And look, you are right.

[12] But to convince yourself that I am indeed the one I told you, you should bring now all the sick people of your house here to Me, then I will heal them. Do you believe that?”

[13] **The innkeeper** said: “Lord, Lord, Your words have deeply penetrated in my soul and awakened a life therein that I never felt before, and therefore, everything that You have said to me must be true. So I believe without doubt that You surely will heal all my sick people.”

[14] On this, the many sick people were brought into our big dining hall. Some among them were tormented with malicious fevers, some by epilepsy, others by gout, one was blind, and two lost their ability of voice and speech from fear during the earthquake.

## 76. THE LORD HEALS THE SICK IN THE INN



**A**FTER half an hour when all the sick – about 30 all together – were brought into the hall, **the innkeeper** said: “Look, o Lord, Lord, here are the sick of my house now. If You want to heal them, please do so, then my whole house will believe in You and greatly honor and love You.”

[2] **I** said: “Then it will be done according to your faith.”

[3] After I had said that, they all were healed at once, in such a way as if there never was anything wrong with them.

[4] When they hardly could stop glorifying and praising My Being, and the healed ones were thinking that I was a god in the sense of their pagan teaching, they asked Me while they were on

their knees if I would be so merciful to tell them if I were perhaps Jupiter himself or another god, so that they could then always express the greatest honor and gratitude to that god.

[5] **But I** said: “I am neither Jupiter nor any other of your series of gods who never existed, do not exist and never will exist.

[6] **Go now** all to your rooms and take food and some wine and strengthen your limbs. All the things that you should further believe and think of Me will be proclaimed to you tomorrow.”

[7] Then the healed ones went immediately to their rooms, and several of them walked to a few priests who were gathered in another hall of this inn and were still deliberating as to how they still could extort more offerings from the people. And they told them how they were miraculously healed by a Man who was according to His clothing a Jew, but worked by His word and will as a true, living God.

[8] When the priests heard that about Me, and saw that the *former* sick ones whom they knew well, were now standing completely healed before them, they did not know what to do.

[9] **One of the priests** said: “Let us go ourselves to that peculiar Man, then it will appear what is behind Him, because the dumb people cannot form a correct opinion about such things. But let first one of us go there, test that Wonder Man and tell us then what kind of person He is. He is probably one of the Essenes who are very well acquainted with all sorts of sorcery.”

[10] **Then one of them, a Roman who was well acquainted with many arts and sciences, came to us in the dining hall, greeted the captain, and then he directly asked for Me.**

[11] **The captain** said very surly to him: “Here at my right side sits the One whose name we are not worthy to speak out.”

[12] **When the priest** heard that, he became less bold, turned to Me and said: “Forgive me that I take the liberty to ask You with all respect and modesty how You were able to heal the sick without any means. I also understand many things and have much experience, and therefore I know how to make an opinion about what a person can achieve who is well acquainted with the

secret powers of nature. Without certain secret means no magician or priest has, as far as I know, performed a miracle that only the gods can do – if they truly and really exist. But with You it seems nevertheless to be so that You can perform deeds by Your word and Your will – and You do not need any tools for that?

[13] How did You attain to such willpower, and how can also another person attain to this? For it is sure that with human beings there are great differences in willpower, and from that it can be concluded that someone who already possesses a strong will from nature, would, with a correct development of his will, finally be able to reach an amazing power, especially when he also would be completely acquainted with the secret powers, might and abilities of the great nature.

[14] But where and how can one attain to such development of his will? Where and how did You attain to such willpower as almost never existed before?”

## **77. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OF THE PRIEST**



SAID: “You also studied the Scriptures of the Jews, and this already in Rome, and *also* 5 years later when under the emperor August you were sent as a priest of Zeus, Mars, Minerva and Mercury to Thebes in Upper Egypt, where you also let yourself be initiated in the old mysteries.

[2] Beginning with Moses you especially concentrated yourself on the 4 great prophets. But since you still could not understand them despite your reading and thinking, again 5 years later, when as a priest for the people and the soldiers you were transferred to this place, you secretly went to a Jewish scribe and asked for clarification about that which was dark to you. But since that scribe was not able to give this to you, you gave up the Scripture of the Jews, just as you gave up your own scriptures much earlier.

[3] But you still kept the Scripture of the Jews in your memory, and so the deeds of Moses, Aaron, Joshua, Elijah and the other prophets must have shown you that it was only with the help of the one, only true God of the Jews that those men could accomplish such things and deeds which did not ever happen with any other people on the whole Earth.

[4] Now if you see Me also work like this, I certainly am also working through and with God. Are you Romans not saying yourselves that without divine inspiration no great wise man exist? Then I also will certainly very strongly be inspired by the one, only true God of the Jews.”

[5] **The priest said:** “Yes, yes, You could be right in this, and You are certainly more deeply initiated in the mysteries of your Scriptures than that scribe who pretended to be wise, of whom I tried to receive a true light and whom I finally left as being the wisest of the two of us.

[6] But You formerly could not have seen or known me, just as I also could not have seen or known You before. Then how do You know my secret ambition over quite a long series of years as if I shortly before had revealed it to You? As if I told You what I had done in secret and what I wanted to do, because I as a priest never betrayed to anyone what I had done or accomplished for the sake of my very own assurance.

[7] Therefore, how do You, who are a complete stranger to me, know what I have done in Rome, then in Thebes and finally here in Asia?”

[8] **I said:** “Look, also that I can do with the help of the one, only true God of the Jews, who is almighty and also all-knowing from eternity, without beginning and without end.”

[9] **The priest said:** “I will not dispute that, and You surely will be completely right this time as You were right before. But still, it is strange that your one – and according to You the only true – God only seldom lets Himself be found or even be used by a Jew like You now.

[10] I honestly confess that I only have very little faith and trust,

neither in the one or in the other deity, because the more one will search them with the greatest possible zeal, the more he is withdrawn from it, and it is truly more useful and sensible for a human being to never try to lift the veil of Isis than to throw himself into the darkest abyss of all imaginable doubts by such useless effort. It is better to remain blind and dumb like the apes than to search after some deity who probably existed or still exists nowhere else except in the fantasy of men who want to rule over other people.

[11] You may have found Your deity, but how and where? That You will keep for Yourself, just like the elders have kept it for themselves, and they then enveloped their doctrine of one god or several gods in such deep darkness that no sun could ever illuminate them anymore.

[12] For I also am a human being, and I fervently longed since my youth to only one time come close to a deity. But why, up to now – while I am already close to 70 years – did still no deity come to me to grant me some special power? And why also not to those Jews that I know, except to You, wonderful Friend? That is why, Friend, I attach little importance to all the gods. The rest You can make up for Yourself.”

## 78. THE LORD TEACHES ABOUT THE DOWNFALL OF MANKIND



**I**N this I said to the pagan priest: “It was not totally incorrect in your speech to Me to say that certain deities only existed from the fantasy of men who wanted to rule over their fellowmen, and these had to work and fight for them so that such rulers could have a very good life and enjoy themselves.

[2] But look, in the beginning of time when men lived on Earth it was not so. Then everyone knew the one, only true God, and many thousand times thousands were instructed, guided and protected by Him. It was profoundly and thoroughly shown to

everyone that of their own free will they should not let themselves be captured by all the enticements, because these would draw the soul in the judgment of matter and its death, and would make them deaf, blind and insensible for all that is divine and purely spiritual.

[3] But since God gave the greatest possible freedom of will to everyone to follow His advice or the attraction of the world, very soon many people let themselves be seduced and blinded by the world. By that they lost contact with God, because their inner sight became completely blinded by the bad love for the world.

[4] And look, only when a great part of the people were blinded by the world and forgot by that the only true God completely, the blind people began to make all kinds of gods for themselves that had to help these blind worldly people out of their great need – because they were visited by God with all kinds of afflictions in order to turn them away from the world – and this was done by payment of all kinds of offerings and by the prayers of the priests, out of which all too soon proud rulers came up.

[5] But they were not helped, because the one, only true God could not and might not help them, so that they would not have become even more blind and godless. For if God would have given them the help they wanted after they called upon their false and totally non-existing gods, that would really have been a true triumph for the greedy and extremely imperious priests, and the one who would have been helped would wear himself out in bringing offerings to make the priests and gods never become hostile to him again.

[6] And look, the Jews, who are the chosen people of God – because out of love for Him their fathers resisted the longest not to let themselves be seduced and blinded by the world – have in the course of time also turned away from God and turned to the world just like the gentiles, and that is why they also became deaf and blind, and now worse than the gentiles, because these are again beginning to search for what was lost, and many of

them have found it again completely.

[7] But for most of the leading Jews it still did not come into their mind to search for what was lost – the eternal truth. They feel very comfortable in their life of night. Although they feel within themselves that they are godless, they do not want to show anything to the people about this because of the rich offerings, and they are the most bitter enemies of the one who wants to give a true light to the people, show them the right way to God and who would truly help them to search and surely find Him.

[8] Therefore, the little light that those Jews still have, who are completely pining away, will also be taken away from them and given to the gentiles who are really longing for it.”

## 79. THE RIGHT SEARCHING FOR GOD



YOU also said that you do not care anymore for any deity because you searched already for so long for a true deity and despite your zealous searching not one came ever not even a bit close to you.

[2] Although you zealously searched for yourself a long time for a true deity, you still did not see any. But you also should realize that you searched for the true deity only very one-sidedly and selfishly. You only wanted to be sure yourself that there is a true deity as a great life's friend for you and that the soul of man continues to live forever after the death of the body, but the people had to languish in their old foolishness and complete blindness and had to make offerings to you priests just like before.

[3] With the one, only true God however, a priest is not in the least given any preference compared even to the most insignificant person of the people. With God there is no hierarchy among men. To Him emperor and beggar are on one and the same level. Only that person will be favored by God who truthfully recognizes Him, who then loves Him above all,



his fellowman as himself and who keeps the commandments of God as they were given by Moses, being humble in everything and who will not want from anyone something that is unjustified, that is in contradiction with the order and in contradiction with the will of God, neither with violence or cunningly, for all these deeds are an abomination in the eyes of God.

[4] But you priests always shamelessly lied to the people and deceived them. And thus you surely will realize now why the one and only true deity did not want to let Himself be found by you despite all your searching, because He saw all too clearly that solely out of worldly considerations you would leave the people in the old darkness, as this was also the case with many priests in Egypt.

[5] These knew about the one, only true God, but the common people had to believe what they were impressed on them to believe. And since these priests behaved that way, God struck them also with blindness, and in this blindness you are still now and will remain for a long time if you will not turn away from the world and begin to search God, His spiritual Kingdom and its pure justice with the right and in every respect completely true motivation.

[6] Whoever will not search God with all love, meekness, humility, patience and complete self-denial, will not find the One who is the greatest value of life. And whoever will not search and find God in this manner can also not expect exceptional help from Him.

[7] Although God, in His immense love, takes care of all people, as He also takes care of all creatures in the endless big universe according to His eternal, unchangeable order, He only takes care in a special and exceptional way of those who truly recognize Him, do His will that was revealed to them and truly love Him above all in all their actions.

[8] You really searched the one, only true God for a long time with great zeal, but ask yourself now if you ever searched God

in the manner that I have shown you now.

[9] I say to you: not the one who says: ‘Lord, Lord, where are You? When I as Your creature am searching You and call upon You from the dark deepness of the night of my life, why do You not let Yourself be found, and why do You not answer me by saying ‘Here I am?’, will find God the Lord and come to Him, but only the one who searches God in the manner that I have shown you now.

[10] Look, you read Moses and the prophets, and you clearly saw what God wants from men in the spoken-out, well-known 10 commandments, and you liked these commandments so much that you very often said within yourself: ‘Truly, in the whole world there are no laws that are wiser, more suitable for the true happiness and well being of all men, and one can justly assume that they really come from a divine Being.’

[11] But if you could say this within yourself, why did it not come once into your mind to put these laws into practice with yourself? If you would have done that, you would have found God already, but you found all kinds of worldly reasons not to put these laws into practice, although you admired them.

[12] Let these laws from now on become deeds with you, indemnify everyone as good as possible what you did wrong to them, and have for the being the firm will to do this. Then you quickly and easily will find the One whom you sought in vain for so long.”

## 80. THE LORD SHOWS THE RIGHT WAY TO SEARCH GOD



**I**N these words of Mine, **the priest** said: “Truly, very wise Master, inspired by God, I possess a great fortune. Is it sufficient if I spend three quarters of it for good deeds to those who suffered some damage through me according to the laws of Moses – which from now on I want and will completely observe them all – and if I would perform with that *other* one quarter other good deeds of neighborly love until the

end of my life?”

[2] I said: “Friend, that is more than sufficient, for look, God is in Himself the eternal cleanest and purest love.

[3] If someone wants to take a woman because he needs a woman, but has no love, and does also not search that woman with love but only with his dull worldly reason, do you think that such person will ever find a good woman who is full of love for him? He will find a foolish woman, yes, one who will not marry that man but only his gold in order to squander it with others, but no woman who is full of love for him. Therefore, the one who wants to find a woman full of love must also search her with love.

[4] Whoever wants to search and find God, who is the purest love, must also search Him with the purest love in his own heart to which no other love for the dirty world adheres, no matter how insignificant it seems. And if he will search Him in this way, he also will most certainly find Him.

[5] When you were still a young man, you were fortunate to be pleasing to a very beautiful and very rich daughter of a patrician. You also had a great love for her and you would have received her as wife if your great love for her would have been completely pure. But while that daughter, whom at that time was called a pearl of Rome, loved you very much without you noticing it more than necessary, it was her intention to be secretly informed about your love for her through ways that were unknown to you, and she soon discovered that you also had other maids for whom you also opened your heart.

[6] When the pearl of Rome knew about it, she soon turned away from you and showed no more love for you, and so she turned away her face from you.

[7] Then you became of course very sad. You still made a few futile efforts to regain her affection, and you also might have succeeded but you could not deny yourself and free yourself from your passion for the others by which you lost that pearl completely.

[8] And look, this is more or less how it is with God who is the eternal purest love. Only with the purest and completely spotless love you can and will find, see and praise Him and receive from Him the eternal life.

[9] It is for the one, whose heart is full of all kinds of worldly things, of course difficult to cleanse himself from them, but a firm will is a hard worker, and what seems impossible to you today will be tomorrow, and still further in the future, more and more easy to accomplish.

[10] But ask yourself now in your heart if what I have explained to you now, you also understood as you should.”

## 81. THE PRIEST JUSTIFIES HIS WORLDLY LIFE



**HE priest said:** “Truly, superhuman wise Master, I understood You well and realize now still better than before that You must be helped by a really existing, living God, for otherwise it would be absolutely impossible for You to be so accurately informed about the relationships during my youth while no human being in the whole of Rome ever knew about these things, and certainly not now.

[2] In everything that You said about me You were completely right, and I can say: not You, as a human being like me, but a God has spoken now through You.

[3] But think about all our human circumstances, and moreover about the relationships within the state that bind us with iron compelling chains that we, as the now existing priests, did certainly not make.

[4] Every human being who unconsciously and unintentionally comes into this world, and who already immediately after his birth has to be fed in order to keep his very mortal life and become a strong person according to the strict laws of nature, is – seen from a rational point of view – a very poor being.

[5] Once you grow up and come to a point where you can distinguish between day and night and red from green, the elders

are zealous to give you an education which no child can determine for himself.

[6] After much learning you finally become an educated man and you have to choose a profession by which you can provide in your livelihood for your whole life. But you want to live not a bad *life* in the world but as good as possible because you just have to live, and so you choose, according to your capabilities, logically for a profession in which you can live more freely and better under the powerful chains of the state. And that was for me the profession of priest. I became a priest, no matter if that for which I stood was based on the lie and the cheating of the people or on the truth. In short, I had to be what I am still now in accordance with the laws of the state.

[7] Already since childhood the world and the best possible personal care were the first of which one had to be concerned. Besides, soon all kinds of other needs awakened in me, and having the means for it to also satisfy these needs – of course always in accordance with the laws of the state – you also satisfy them as much as possible. And no deity appeared from Heaven or from the Earth who would have said: ‘Just listen, priest, you live and act entirely against My will and My order. Live in the future like this and like that, or else I will chastise you in a terrible way.’

[8] Under such circumstances you become filled in your heart and mind with only material, impure and non-spiritual love while on the other hand you are not urged by anything purely spiritual or divine, and outwardly you stayed at least as you could stay and finally also had to stay in accordance with the laws of the state. Although, especially at an older age, you gradually begin to ask yourself: yes, but is there actually one spark of truth in what you stand for and what you practice. All I teach and do is clearly and obviously lie and deceit. Is there no fundamental truth anymore on the whole Earth?’

[9] I investigated, searched and investigated and searched continuously almost until now – and I found nothing. How

could I ever come to meet a true deity with the purest love while it never wanted to reveal itself to me in one way or another? What does not exist, you also cannot love, whether it is a God or another object that becomes valuable by the imagination of men.

[10] And look now, very wise Master, can I help it that I finally still had to love that which was reachable to me in order to live a pleasant life, because to love the images of your own fantasy means, according to the natural pure reason, that you are a fool.

[11] So if I had to love the one, only true and living God above all for already a long time and had to despise and flee the pleasures of the world that are present for everyone's senses, then such God should have revealed Himself to me, or else my fantasy should have created one with great lively fervor. But neither the one nor the other happened, and so it was obvious that I could not exchange the world and its treasures and goods that feed and delight mankind and enjoy that for which I was born and educated, for a being that did not exist at all for me and did not exist anywhere.

[12] But no matter how, my heart is still filled with worldly things. If today, at this moment, a one, only true deity would reveal Himself to me and tell me what to do, my old world will be cast out of me at once.


[13] If only once that pearl of Rome would have made a true promise to me, telling me that she would be mine if I would do or leave this or that, then I would have been the man for whom no sacrifice would be too hard. But since such did not happen, I stayed with what was easier for me to reach.

[14] I see and know very well that all the people that I came to know already since time immemorial are living in great misery and confusion, and finally they also often die in full despair, but what is the use of all that seeing and knowing if no one comes to show them the full truth?

[15] Look, wise Master, You are really right in everything You told me, but also I am not wrong according to human reasoning. Can those poor people help it that they are born in all blindness

in this world and that it was imposed on them to be educated among great lies and deceit? Am I right or not?"

## 82. THE FORMER REVELATIONS OF THE LORD TO THE PRIEST

 SAID: "Although you are right in many respects, but in general you are completely wrong, because you accuse the deity of negligence and complete indifference towards the people – and that, friend, is not true, even if this is how it seems according to your reason.

[2] God always revealed Himself to the people, and thus also to you, already in Rome and still more clearly in Thebe, and once when you were sitting at the shore of the Nile when you heard a loud voice that said: 'Read Moses, and live according to the laws that are written in it, then you will find what you are searching.'

[3] Then you began to read Moses again and also the other prophets, but still, for all kinds of reasons, you neglected to live and act according to the laws.

[4] A year later when you came again to that same spot at the river, you heard that same voice again and thought about it for a long time, but you still did not come to actions, for firstly you were a Roman priest and according to your idea you did not want to act against the laws of Rome because this could have resulted in a worldly disadvantage for you, although you knew that it was not forbidden for a priest to also believe in the God of the Jews. And secondly, acting according to the laws of Moses seemed to be too troublesome for you, and you finally thought that the voice was only an illusion that can easily happen. And you thought within yourself that, if anything would be true in that voice, it would let hear itself more often.

[5] And so you went on investigating and searching but you did not come to actions, and you could be compared to a master builder who draws one construction plan after another but when

the construction has to be put into practice the trouble and the costs scares him off and he does not execute the construction.

[6] To think, reflect, evaluate, investigate or search are no actions, friend, but only the intention for an action, but since life is not an intention for an actual life but the actual and active life itself, the intention to live must also become an active life if you want to accomplish by that what you are searching for.

[7] Although you did something now and then, but that was too little to change your way of life, and so you always remained on one and the same spot. Only now, for the first time, you have taken the firm decision to become a completely different man, wanting to live according to the will of the one, only true God of the Jews whom I revealed to you, and therefore you will find an abundance of truth of what you searched for in vain for such a long time.

[8] You actually already found it, but you can be compared to someone who in the midst of a dense forest does not see the forest because of the trees.”

[9] **The priest** said: “Listen, truly very wise Master, how must I understand and interpret that?”

[10] **I** said: “Look there. There is an empty cup, but I want that cup to be full of wine, and you should drink that wine. Take it and drink, and then evaluate if a magician can also accomplish that.”

[11] When **the priest** saw that, and had tasted the wine that tasted very flavory, he looked at Me with astonishment and said: “Truly divine, wise Master, that was never accomplished by a human being. You must be in a very mighty connection with that only true God of the Jews, because Your will and the will of Your God seem to be completely one.

[12] The cup was totally empty and You filled it completely with an exquisite, excellent wine. I only tasted such wine once in Rome with the highest priest, and it was called ‘vinum



olympicum'<sup>1</sup>.

[13] Since that was possible to You, You must be able to do many other things. When someone has come to such close friendship with God like You, he finally will also be able to make himself completely immortal.

[14] Yes, if I also had come into this world as a Jew, maybe I also could have achieved a high degree of unity with God, for I would not lack the will and zeal to accomplish that. But since I came as a gentile in the deep night into this world I never could find the right way, and so I always was stuck in the same night and could not receive a true light until now. But from now on it will be different.

[15] However, allow me now to go to my colleagues and tell them what I experienced here, for they also feel just like me what they lack.

[16] **I said: “Then go and speak the truth.”**

### **83. THE OBJECTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN CONCERNING THE BEAUTIES OF NATURE**

**W**HEN the priest went to his colleagues who were already waiting with fervent desire for his return. When he came to his colleagues he told them about all the things he had seen and experienced, and they were completely amazed.

[2] **One of them, an old Greek, said: “What else do we need? That Man is a God. We will do what He has ordered, then we will live.”**

[3] **And so, that evening the gentile priests became My disciples in the city of Aphek, and the next day they declared their belief and gave their vow to Me.**

[4] **But we went to rest after the departure of the priests and rested well until the morning.**

[5] **As always, so also this time, I was outside already more than**

---

<sup>1</sup> Latin for ‘Olympic wine’ or divine wine.

1 hour before sunrise – this time with My disciples and the captain – and since it was a very clear morning, we enjoyed from a hill outside the mountain city an exceptional beautiful distant view and many surprising beautiful morning scenes of nature.

[6] When the captain and also our innkeeper next to Me were really thrilled when they admired the beautiful nature, **the captain** said to Me after a while of blissful admiration: “Lord and Master, it hardly can be blamed on the people when they slowly began to love the world and finally became even godless, because what man can observe with all his senses in his initial clear natural condition will often capture him with an irresistible force, and even the most spiritual teachings and words cannot free him from today till tomorrow from the shackles that the numberless enticements of the world put on him. As today’s morning is adorned with numberless charms, so it certainly must have been the case already many times before. And that people, at the view of such beautiful things, came to all kinds of strange fantasies is for me now very easy to understand, and that they came absorbed and rooted by it is also because of the too beautiful and ever changing scenes of nature.

[7] In order to withdraw himself from all the enticements of the world, man must possess a very high degree of heroic self-denial.

[8] I imagine that those people who do not inhabit and live in such charming regions of the Earth are probably more receptive for purely spiritual and therefore supernatural truths than people who are inhabitants of a too beautiful country.

[9] I am only looking at the old, very sad looking land of Egypt. As long as the people did not zealously cultivate it, a large number of spiritually awakened people were living there, but as soon as the zeal of the people began to beautify too much the sterile nature of that big country, they more and more lost their spiritual attitude, and soon the natural tendency prevailed. All kinds of images, and from this, all kinds of gods originated, and

the spirit of man, which is his greatest possession of life, went completely lost. And Moses himself had to keep the people of Israel, who became too sensual, for nearly 40 years in an unfriendly desert, which was in natural respect really not pretty, in order to make them receptive for the inner godly-spiritual.

[10] Therefore, I am of the opinion that this Earth is largely too charming and too beautiful for the spiritual development of men.

[11] Of course, personally I indescribably like this morning very much, but I also feel what kind of charming mighty impression it must make on a healthy young mind.”

[12] **I said:** “On the one hand you are right, but on the other hand not. For if I had not equipped men on this Earth in such a way that by their free will they had to develop their reason and their mind themselves and had to search My Spirit in themselves, I also could have let them rest as polyps in the dark abyss of the sea. But this is not how it can be done because man is a completely free being and has to develop himself.

[13] Look, this completely big and beautiful nature of the Earth is therefore very necessary for man for the development of himself, for without that nature, his thinking, feeling and experiencing would look very meager and he would not be on a much higher level than the kingdom of animals. But since the Earth is equipped with such great variety of all kinds of creatures, man must view this, being surprised and delighted. And from that viewing and comparing of the different things of all the kingdoms in nature of this Earth, and so also of the always alternating days and seasons, and also of the stars in the sky, man comes by necessity to an ever deeper thinking and will begin by that also to search and to investigate the fundamental cause of the existence of those numberless many things. And when man has come that far, then I also will come to meet him and will reveal Myself more and more and ever more clearly to him.

[14] Therefore, My friend, it is very good that the Earth, on

which men are called to become children of God, is in every respect equipped with great beauty and variety.

[15] But of course, man should not take up too much love for this beautiful world and not adhere to it with all his senses, for by that he will become materialistic in his soul and he will withdraw himself more and more from what he should achieve, and he will become blind, dark and evil in this short life for the test of his free will.

[16] How difficult it will then be to bring such men on the right track of life shows the experience of all times, and you yourself experienced it already many times and will still experience it.

[17] But now a few priests are coming to us with the one whom I taught yesterday, and they want to see and to know what kind of person I actually am, because the priest, whom I already taught, has illuminated a light with them and forced them to think deeply. Therefore, we will let those seekers come to us and let them find what they seek, namely the truth of life.”

#### 84. THE REQUEST AND THE PROMISE OF THE PRIESTS



WHILE I was talking about this with the captain, the priests were already with us and they kindly greeted us.

[2] On this, **the one who was already taught by Me**, said to his companions: “Look, here is the great and exalted miraculous Man, to whose will everything has to comply in all submissiveness, and in whose words are the deepest truth and wisdom. Therefore, we give Him all honor, all praise and all glory.”

[3] **I** said: “Friends, I did not come into this world to let Myself be honored, praised or glorified by men, but with the intention that all men would, by Me and in Me, find back and recognize the One whom they lost by their own fault and *whom they* entirely failed to recognize, and that they will know His will, and act and live accordingly. The one who really wants to honor, praise and glorify Me, must accept My teaching, and act and live

by it.

[4] But as long as you will honor your iron, stone and wooden gods, you will not attain to the true light of life from God, will not recognize Him in Me and therefore you also will have no part in His Kingdom which has come now in Me from the Heavens on this Earth.”

[5] On this, **one of them**, who was still much attached to the worship of many gods, said: “It will all be correct what You say, and as far as we are concerned we also would soon have abandoned our gods, but then what will the people do, and what will they say to us since we were the ones who convinced them with much persuasion and also with many signs that the gods really exist and we recommended them and urged them to honor these? The people are still very much attached to what they have accepted from their childhood, and it will be difficult to completely take away what they had and to give them something better instead.”

[6] **I** said: “All this depends on your will. Even a child understands the truth sooner than something which is false and thus a lie. Therefore, a grown-up person will surely understand the truth all the sooner and will make it his own with love. So now it only depends on your will, and then it will be My will that will help you to accomplish a good work in My name.

[7] But do not expect any coercion from Me, because for Me every human being has a completely free will and he can do what he wants. But woe later to the one who despite that he recognized the truth has nevertheless banned it out of him for the sake of worldly advantages, who did not act according to its fundamental principles but who finally even persecuted it with fire and sword. Truly, for him it would be better if a millstone would be hanged around his neck and be drowned into the sea where it is deepest.

[8] For *it is clear* that your gods and their images, made by human hands, mean nothing, and the manner on which you look upon it even a thousand times less, because that which still had

some inner, spiritual, living meaning according to the old teaching of correspondences has been changed for already a long time into the most dense and darkest nonsense, and with that, also into the coarsest lie.

[9] When I now again bring you the full truth about the existence of the one, only true God, and make His will known to you, then give up also the completely meaningless gods and remove their images – accept the truth.

[10] And when you have accepted it, give it then also to those who hunger and thirst for it for already a long time. Then by that, they will not become your enemies but only your true friends, for if they did not persecute you when you solely taught them evil things, they will all the less persecute you when in My name you will give them good things for this earthly live, and even more for their life in the beyond.

[11] But what My name is and who I actually am, you will all soon come to know.”

[12] On this, **one of the gentile priests** said: “Listen, miraculous Master in the power of Your will and word, yesterday, shortly after Your arrival in our inn, You healed all the sick people of the innkeeper, of which deed we soon were completely informed and of which we now also believe that this is only possible with the sure help of a true divine Being. That You always can expect such help is easy to imagine and finally also to understand, and since that is certainly the case with You, we gladly would like that You also here would show us a sign of the power of Your word and will. If we also will have proof of that, we will even today destroy all our gods, and in the temple of Zeus we will bring an offering to the one, only true God of the Jews in the manner of Moses and Aaron.”

[13] **I** said: “Such offering is truly never needed for the one, only true God, not only of the Jews but of all men, creatures and things. In all those offerings, in the inner, purely spiritual meaning, it was only I Myself who was represented and the Kingdom of God that I am now establishing, not for the flesh

and blood but for the souls and the spirit of men on this Earth.

[14] But if I Myself am now walking here around before everyone's eyes among you men, then the Scripture is fulfilled, and nothing is needed anymore that would have to represent Me in a manner that corresponds to Me.

[15] The new offering that is pleasing to Me is valid for the whole future and consists solely of that you people would believe in Me, love God in Me above all and your fellowmen as yourself by keeping My commandments.

[16] You should not build for Me any temples of wood, stone and of gold and silver to worship Me in it with all kinds of vain, meaningless ceremonies which were never pleasing to Me and will never please Me. The real temple in which you should honor Me should be your heart that loves Me. Only the gift of the one who gives Me in his heart by doing works of love for Me and for his fellowman will be valuable to Me, and I will reward him with the eternal and blissful life in My Heavens.

[17] You therefore should also not establish any feast day or workless holiday to honor Me, for every day is Mine, and you should think about Me every day and do good works in My name.

[18] And if you ask Me something, withdraw yourself in a little room and pray hidden, then I will answer your prayer – this is how the Lord God Zebaoth speaks to you men.

[19] Away with all temples, idols, with all feast days and with all those meaningless and worthless ceremonies, but instead of that, erect temples for Me in your hearts and bring offerings to Me of pure, unselfish love. Make up for the damage that was done by you to the poor, blind people who were for the greatest part lied to and cheated by you, then you will have part of the Mercy of God.”

## 85. A MIRACLE WITH A SYMBOLIC MEANING FOR THE PRIESTS



YOU have asked Me to perform a sign, and therefore I also will perform one before your eyes, but you will not become blissful by the sign but by your faith in Me and by living according to My teaching.

[2] Look, here on this hill, which is completely bare and waste, there is still an old fig tree that is withered for already fully 30 years. At that time a terrible thunderstorm broke out. The rain was streaming down from the clouds on the Earth and washed away the already meager soil from the rocky surface, and soon the grass and the trees withered away, for they could not be fed anymore.

[3] Look, this hill and its rather vast environment, and thus also this tree, can exactly be compared with your knowledge of the one, only true God. Without the true, inner knowledge of the one, only true and living God, everything is, and must be, dead and waste and barren for men. He withers and pines away because he cannot find any food for his soul and spirit because the storm of his worldly attitude has washed away from him the feeding and life-bringing soil which is God's living Word. So also, this tree, and all the grass around it, is withered and it cannot come to life on its own because there is no soil. And it only can do this with God's power that can create new soil that contains everything that is needed for the life of plants. And so I want that this whole region, and in the first place this hill, will be covered with about 2 ells high of fertile soil. Let it be!"

[4] When I had said that, the whole region and also the hill was covered with clearly very fertile soil by which the gentile priests were so surprised and upset that they began to shake, and **the one**, who was taught the night before, cried aloud: "Yes, I have found here the One whom I searched in vain for already a long time! You, o Lord, great, holy and mighty above all, are truly the One Himself about whom You said that I still would find



Him! For only a God can cover by His word in one moment a desolate landscape with the most fertile soil! This is impossible for human beings!

[5] Hail to us that we finally have found You exactly as we have desired for a long time to find You! Now the fatal veil of Isis has been lifted before our eyes at one stroke! O, all honor and all love to You only, eternally great, only true God and Lord!

[6] O, forgive us our many sins that we have committed in our great blindness against You and also against our fellowmen! We want and will from now on, with Your above all mighty help, as much as possible make up for the evil that we have ever done! Be forgiving and merciful to us! Do not reject us sinners too far away from You, o You our God and our Lord!”

[7] **I said: “You have well spoken now, but it was not your flesh and blood that inspired you but the Spirit of My word that you have accepted in your mind. You also are now covered with fertile soil just like this hill and this very wide environment, and what was waste and barren and could not produce any fruit for life, will become green everywhere and produce a rich variety of fruits that will really feed and completely satiate your soul for his eternal life.**

[8] **So remain active as you have intended, then you soon will flourish for the life of many, just like this hill and its whole environment will now become green by My word and will flourish. And as you were a man whose spirit of the truth of life had been dead up to now, so you will also – only by My word that you have accepted as a living Word of God and have taken up within you – be awakened to life to produce true fruits of life, like this fig tree will do now before your eyes while for fully 30 years it had been barren and dead and where only the trunk and a few stronger roots and branches can be seen.**

[9] **I now want this hill, together with the whole environment, to become green and flourish to richly produce fruits, and for this old and moldered fig tree to become alive again and produce fruits for the enjoyment of the people and the birds from the sky.**

So be it.”

[10] On these words of Mine, the hill and the whole environment became green and flourished, and the fig tree became full of leaves and blossom and was also provided with many new branches and roots.

## 86. THE DISCIPLE ANDREAS SPEAKS ABOUT THE WORKS AND THE WORDS OF THE LORD



**T**HAT made our gentile priests completely speechless from sheer amazement upon amazement, for only now they realized very clearly who the One was in Me who was standing before them.

[2] Although **our innkeeper**, who was with us, saw the great healing sign that I performed the evening before and about which he was very amazed, it was only after the sign of this morning that he was convinced that I was not like a great prophet acting and working with the Spirit from God, but completely independently out of My own might and power. So he said to the captain who was also astonishingly watching with **his companions**: “High commander, this Man is not a human being that performs these unheard-of signs with the help of the one, only true God of the Jews, but in Him lives physically, visibly before us, the whole, eternal, endless fullness of the deity. For He said: ‘I want it’ and not: ‘This is how God spoke to Me, and this or that has to happen and exist.’”

[3] **The captain said to the innkeeper**: “Friend, I already knew that since Pella where He went to and where He also taught and performed great signs like here, but I never saw a sign like this one before, although a few that looked liked it and which loudly and clearly said to me: ‘See, this is in a most wonderful way the Lord Himself.’”

[4] Although He says: ‘**I was sent by the Father into this world,**’ but He is the One who sent Himself by His love for us men into this world to be from now on not an invisible or

incomprehensible God and Father for us, but well visible and understandable, so that in the future we can really believe that He is the only true God and that no other God or Lord exists or can exist apart from Him.

[5] In Him lives the original existence of all existence, the original power of all powers, the original might of all mights, the clearest self-consciousness of all the consciousness of all the creatures of the whole eternal infinity that is filled with His works. And so, in Him lives also the highest and eternal unfathomable wisdom. And see, all this I do not only believe as usually a person believes a truth that he heard, because apart from the fact that he believes it, he still investigates it with his reason and wonders if that great truth will also be complete when it is fully connected with its separate parts and how one could be completely convinced about it. But I am completely and fully convinced of all those things, and I am prepared to give my life for this perfect and deep conviction.”

[6] **The innkeeper said:** “High commander, I still cannot be as deeply initiated as you are in this very holy mystery, but I believe now without doubt everything that you said now, and I hope that also I and my whole house will become completely convinced about it. Therefore, all honor and love is now to the one, visible God before us.”

[7] **As the captain and the innkeeper spoke, so also spoke the priests and also the disciples among each other.**

[8] **A priest went to a disciple and asked him if I often performed such signs.**

[9] **The disciple said:** “Go to all the places in the whole of Galilee, Judea, Samaria and still other regions in the south and north, and from the east to the west, and investigate there, then they will tell and show you what the Lord has done.

[10] Many signs like this here were performed, and all the regions where we passed through with Him are full of His deeds and full of His honor, for no one is like Him, neither in Heaven nor on Earth. But He does not want us to speak much about the

great signs that He did to confirm the truth of His teaching of which you already know the main points now, because the signs will become old and will perish in the future, as everything is perishable and changeable in this world, and when after many years they will talk about it, the people will not believe it and will not grasp it. But His words will not perish but will exist eternally as the truth of all truths in all the Heavens and on the whole Earth and in the big world of the spirits.

[11] So He only wants that this word of life, which is brought from the Heavens to this world, be proclaimed to all men and that they would receive the living faith in Him by acting according to that word.

[12] If the people will do that, they will be awakened and strengthened by Him in such a way that in His name they will perform signs themselves as we also have already performed a lot of signs in His name by laying our hands on all kinds of sick people by which they became completely healthy. This sign will become only useful to you if you will live and act according to His teaching.

[13] Such sign can be considered as an exceptional great miracle if the people who personally witnessed it did not really know who the One is who performed the sign, but once the people have recognized who the One is who performed the sign, the sign as such is no more a miracle, for then they will realize that for God, the eternal almighty One, nothing is impossible.

[14] What is this Earth except the word and the will of the Lord from His love and wisdom? What are the moon, the sun and all the numberless stars with everything they carry and contain, while they are – as we know for sure – also celestial bodies of which most of them that we can see with our eyes are incomparably much bigger than this Earth that carries and feeds us?

[15] If it is possible for God the Lord of eternity to call to life such great works only by His will, be it in one moment or based on His love and wisdom during longer periods of time, then it


will just be as easy for Him to cover a small spot of bare surface with fat soil by His word and His will, and to let grow such fruits according to its kind as the condition of the land requires according to the order that was established by Him.

[16] You Romans, who are very intelligent and have much experience, can easily realize and understand this, and so you also will realize and understand that it are not the signs that the Lord performs now that are the main thing for us men, but His word and His teaching that shows us the way to eternal life. The word from God's mouth is therefore for us everything in all. Through that, we will eternally exist and live, and we will be there where He is, and we will perform works by His word and His will in us."

[17] **When the priest heard that from the disciple, he said:** "Friend, you are already far advanced in the wisdom of God, and now I am not surprised that you, the old disciples of the Lord, were after this unheard-of great miracle much less surprised than we gentiles. But what you told me now I will remember as well as if the Lord Himself had told me, and I thank you for your friendship and your patience."

[18] **After that, the priest went back to his colleagues again and spoke with them about what he had heard from the disciple whose name is Andreas.**

## 87. THE MIRACULOUS MORNING MEAL

 **OW a messenger came from the city to tell us that the morning meal was ready, but he hardly could say a word from sheer amazement about the totally changed environment. Therefore I said to the innkeeper why that man – a servant of the house who also had been healed by Me – came to us, after which we went immediately to the city. The priests followed us very closely into the city because the love for Me, that was awakened in them, pulled them with great force to Me.**

**[2] When we all entered the house of the innkeeper and**

immediately went to sit at the table, **the chief priest** saw that I partook of the morning meal and he said to Me: “O Lord, Almighty and most Wise One. It is also a miracle that You want to eat earthly food since everything that is called food on this Earth is also a work of Your word and will. You also could say here: ‘Let this table be set with very clean food and drink from the Heavens,’ and then will happen what You wanted. For look, our pagan food is in the eyes of a strict mosaic Jew unclean, and still You eat it with Your disciples to Your heart’s desire.”

[3] I said: “Look, for the pure everything is pure, and thus certainly also for Me. Wherever I meet people who are full of good will and are by that also for the greatest part pure of heart, also their food will be pure, for I Myself purify it for everyone, and then no one will be soiled by it.

[4] But since you already believe that I, by My word and My will, can cover and order a table with clean food and clean drink from the Heavens, you can sit at the next table, and then will happen as you believe.

[5] And when the table will soon be supplied with food and drink, you can eat and drink without fear or shyness, for such food and drink will strengthen you and make you very courageous in the battle against the prince of the night and of the lie and deceit before gentiles and Jews.”

[6] Then all the priests went to sit at the mentioned table that at the same moment was covered with the finest byssus<sup>1</sup> and provided with the necessary tableware. The platters however were still empty before the surprised guests, and there was still no wine glittering in the crystal cups. And I said to the priests: “Look, your table is now already equipped with the purest food and the purest wine from the Heavens. You still cannot see it with your eyes and cannot taste it. Nevertheless, everything is already there.

[7] But now I want that the spiritual will be covered with the

---

<sup>1</sup> Fine linen cloth of ancient times.

material, and there you can already see all kinds of food and the best of wine. And now you can eat of it and drink the wine.”

[8] Now the priests did not know at all what they should think, and they exhausted themselves in glorifying and honoring My name.


[9] Then they ate, and they could not stop praising the good taste of the food that was all prepared in the Roman manner. And also the wine was to them so exceptionally outstanding that they all said never to have tasted such wine before.

[10] Our innkeeper was then also very desirous to taste something of the miraculous food on the table of the priests.

[11] But I said to him: “Friend, be not all too eager for it, for what you eat at our table has one and the same origin, the same taste and the same power, for also this food is My word and My will.”

[12] When the innkeeper heard this from Me, he forgot his curiosity and in this way also he was completely satisfied.

## 88. ABOUT THE ELIMINATION OF PAGANISM

HEN we and the Roman priests were sufficiently strengthened with the morning meal, **the priests** thanked Me loudly for this miraculous meal, and then they said: “O almighty Lord and only true God, we all believe now completely in You without any doubt, and we also have taken up the firm will to convert the other gentiles to this faith. But we see also that this will not be an easy task because especially the common people are still much adhered to the pagan gods, and they worship and honor their images.

[2] Here in this city, you can hardly find a house that is not completely filled with protecting spirits of the house and a thousand other complete and demigods to which also partly belong those protecting spirits of the house as a name patron if they belong to the name of a family, and they are also worshipped as such.

[3] Well now, to remove all those images of the dark paganism at one stroke by our speeches and teachings about You, will be very hard to us. But for You, o Lord, Lord, it would be easy, because You only have to will it, and then all those meaningless images of idols of the whole city, no matter of what material they are made, will at once be no more there, and then it will be easy for us to bring the people on the right track of light and life.”

[4] I said: “I could of course do that, but then your work for Me and My Kingdom on this Earth will not be easier but only much more difficult, because a very hard and extremely darkened mind and the free will of men are not so easily broken by new signs and wonders as you think. For if My signs that I have performed in Jerusalem had accomplished that, then all the Pharisees and scribes, together with the high priest would be already with Me, and they would be My disciples. But they are too darkened and hard, and they hate and persecute Me everywhere as an agitator and deceiver of the people.

[5] I also could destroy the temple and their ways of delusion in one moment, but that would not improve the dark and hard people in the least but will make them more stubborn in their great maliciousness. And so I will let the temple remain for some time and I will let the pride and imperiousness of those that live there and their worshippers remain until they will turn against Rome, and that will be the end of Jerusalem, its temple and its inhabitants.

[6] Therefore, you also should let remain what is old with the otherwise kind-hearted inhabitants of this city and environment, just as long as they themselves will be enlightened by the light that you have received from Me, and until they themselves will realize that their images of idols are meaningless. And then those who are enlightened will be the ones themselves who will destroy the old deceptions, because for the moment it is sufficient that only the images in the mind of the people are terminated and destroyed. When that is accomplished, the rest



will follow by itself.

[7] But to first destroy the old monuments of faith and to only afterwards enlighten the extremely startled and shocked minds and hearts with the new light would be the same as when someone would let completely break down and destroy his old house before he made a plan for himself of how the new house will look like.

[8] Where does he has to live in the mean time till the new house is ready? But once the new house is built, it will be easy for him to break down the old one and to let it disappear.

[9] If I now would destroy all your images of idols in one moment by the power of My word and will, it would, even this same day, inevitably cause a revolt of the people which you hardly would be able to suppress, no matter how loudly and sharply you would preach in all the alleys and streets about the great wrath of the insulted gods. Because the people would finally very angrily ask how they could have sinned so much against the gods – while they continuously were showing the same readiness to make offerings and were virtuous – that they even took away their images which the people have always highly honored.

[10] The people would finally accuse you of greed – which is something that they very well know about you – and the people would say: ‘Listen you priests, not the gods but you have done this. Bring us back the gods, or else you will fall a prey to our justified wrath.’

[11] And look, under such circumstances you hardly will be able to spread My teaching and the faith in Me among the gentiles.

[12] So first build a new house for them, then they will help you to destroy the old one completely. But for what concerns the gods in your houses which are mostly made of noble metals like gold and silver, melt them, sell the metal and divide the money among the poor who will then certainly not despise you.

[13] My Kingdom that I establish now on this Earth, is a Kingdom of peace and not a kingdom of discord, persecution or

war. And so you should also spread it in peace among the people, and by that not make use of a sword.

[14] But once My teaching will be spread among the nations with the sword, it soon will look very miserable on this Earth. The blood will flow in streams, and all the seas will take on a sad color. Therefore, be all peaceful workers in My name and avoid all dispute and quarrel. Work only by My love in your hearts, for in love lies hidden the greatest power and might.

[15] Remember that although your paganism is an old, molded and lifeless tree, it still has so many strong wooden parts and almost stone roots that it will not let itself be cut down in one blow of an axe. But in time, with the right wisdom, patience and perseverance it nevertheless will have to yield by the many blows of the axe. The sharp axe, which I am giving to you now, is called wisdom. Even the darkest and hardest resistance will finally have to yield to that axe.

[16] This is My will. Act accordingly, then by My love in you, you will reap golden fruits for My Kingdom.

## 89. NEIGHORLY LOVE



WHEN the priests received this directive of Mine, they were very glad, thanked Me for it, left the table, except one who was some chief priest, and went to their room which was also, as already mentioned, located at that moment in the house of the innkeeper, and it was big and strongly built. And they deliberated among each other as to how they would handle this case in order to proceed as quiet and peaceful as possible.

[2] But the priest who stayed with us, talked with the captain about the selling of the golden and silver images of idols since they did not have the possibility here to first melt them and then to sell them as metal. There was also no gold smith in the whole wide environment that could buy such metals and then use them as it would please him.

[3] **The captain said:** “I will do everything for you in everything that is approved by the Lord and Master, but He first will have to mercifully speak out about it and say what is really the right thing to do. For from now on our will must be His will in us.”

[4] **On this I said:** “Do as you see fit. The main thing is that the produce will benefit the poor in an efficient way and manner, which you will be able to evaluate by My Spirit in you.

[5] **Wherever possible, make up for every wrong that was done by you, as I already mentioned. Then by that, you can expect My mercy in your soul. If you cannot make up for an injustice that you did to someone, then you still should have the good will for it and turn to Me in full faith, then I will not leave your just prayer unanswered.**

[6] **But let it also be said to you all that someone who did not make up for the very least of harm that he caused to someone, will not enter My Kingdom. For what you do not want that others would do to you, do that also not to your fellowman.**

[7] **But when someone causes you harm, so that he sins against you, admonish him with all meekness and forgive him. If he improves his life, it will be to your benefit. If he does not improve his life, then do not condemn him for that but turn again in your heart to Me, and also then I will not leave your just prayer unanswered.**

[8] **Everything that you do, do it with all love in My name. By that you will become children of God and heirs of the Kingdom of Heaven, and there will be no end to your happiness, for it will continue forever.**

[9] **If you all have understood this well, then act accordingly, especially you yourselves, and teach also your fellowmen to live by it, for in this way you will be able to spread My Kingdom, which is not of this world, better among the people, and by this you will later receive a great reward in My Kingdom, because what I promise you, is and remains eternal truth.”**

[10] **On this, the captain said:** “Lord and Master, I certainly realize the eternal great truth of all Your words and lessons, and

I also feel deeply in myself that it should be among the people as You have shown us. But nevertheless, there are among the people a lot of evildoers, like thieves, robbers, murderers, adulterers, those who violate boys and girls, among the Jews as well as among the gentiles, and we have very severe laws to relentlessly punish such criminals with all severity as a frightening example for the rest of mankind.

[11] Well now, such criminal is surely also our fellowman and he also could possibly improve his life after some time if we would keep him alive and would teach him what is only good, true and just, and if we also would send the smaller criminals to a good school and would teach them the truth instead of keeping them for a long time imprisoned in dungeons.

[12] But as long as we have our relentless laws, this wish of Mine can only remain a pious wish, for if I myself could be made guilty of a crime, then I also would prefer that they would treat me according to my pious wish instead of being condemned without any love or indulgence.

[13] With the judge it is never: ‘What you do not want that others would do to you, do that also not to your neighbor’ – so our fellowmen – but there it is: ‘I condemn you according to the law.’ And not the least of trace of any love or mercy can be found in it.

[14] Now I myself am a high judge in this region, which You, o Lord and Master, know well, and I had to imprison a lot of criminals. Must I now also show love to them instead of the severity of the law?”

[15] **I said:** “Wherever it is possible, you certainly will do a very good work with this. The one who, physically and spiritually, will free the prisoners from the chains of the devil will also be freed from the bands of eternal death.


[16] **The one who is judge and who judges the blinded people with meekness and righteousness, will later also be equally judged by Me. With the same measure with which you measure, will also be measured to you.**

[17] The one who is merciful will also find mercy with Me. The one however who is a severe judge will also find a very severe judge in Me. For it will exactly be that same severity with which he has judged his fellowmen, that will later be his own judge.

[18] So everyone carries his own future judge within himself. Let this be your guideline, My friend Pellagius.”

[19] With this, he was completely satisfied, and we went then again outside, but to another side of the city Aphek.

## 90. THE PROMISE AND ADMONITION OF THE LORD

 HE hill where we stayed in the morning was located on the east side of the city. The place where we went to after the morning meal was located on the west side outside of the city, and the hill was higher. That hill was formerly completely bare, but in the morning that one was also covered with fat soil and was richly provided with all kinds of grass and fragrant herbs.

[2] When we arrived at that hill, they were all surprised, and **the innkeeper and the Roman priest** said: “See now how far the divine power and might are reaching in all its fullness. This morning, o Lord, we saw that by Your word of power You made the eastern side of the city green, and we thank You now again that by Your power, You, o Lord, also thought about the western side that was even more rough and bare.

[3] This part outside of our city, from where we have a beautiful and wide view to the west and the south, was only seldom visited by our inhabitants of this city because of its very unrefreshing bareness – and certainly never in the hot summer because the black stones were always heated up by the sun in such a way that one could really not walk on them.

[4] Now, by Your immense goodness and mercy, o Lord, also this dry and waste part outside of our city, which is also very big, has been changed into fertile land. And our flocks that are now very weak and that we only could keep alive in the lower

valleys, will find a rich pasture and will also soon greatly multiply by which we will be able to show the poor and also the strangers more good deeds than had been possible up to now.

[5] O Lord and Master of eternity, without beginning or ending, now the whole wide environment of this city has been changed by Your mercy into a true Elysium, and the view gives us great joy. But one thing we still would like to ask You for this region.

[6] Look, this whole region is poorly provided with water and has only very few springs. But for You, everything is possible. Would You also provide this region with several good, pure springs?"

[7] I said: "Also this you will receive at the right moment. But for you, our innkeeper, I will let a big spring come into existence on this hill, because it belongs to your possession, and which will sufficiently provide this whole city with water. But for what concerns this whole wide environment, springs will come up by itself in the winter for which you will not have to wait long, and they will supply this region with water.

[8] But take care that your faith in Me and love for Me and your fellowmen will not dry up, and become dry in your hearts, for if that would happen with you or with your descendants, then also these springs will dry up, and this whole wide environment will become even more dry than it had been up till now.

[9] When this region was given to the Israelites during the time of Joshua and the judges, it was as fertile as now, and it also remained so under the first kings of Israel. But when later envy, jealousy, persecution and wars existed among the tribes of Israel, and the Jews turned away from Me and forgot Me more and more, I let this region be destroyed by great thunderstorms and storms in the whole environment, and all the zeal of the people who came to live here was not capable to make these fields fertile again.

[10] Now I have changed this region into a fertile one, and there, at the top of this hill, you can already see a big spring coming up. And your zeal will know how to gather the water and to

direct it to the right places. But stay in the love that you promised Me, and do not leave the faith that you have in Me. Then I also will stay with you with My blessings.

[11] What you will ask the Father in My name will also be given to you. And wherever only 2 or 3 of you will come together in My name, in full faith, I will be among you in the spirit of My love, might and power. What you then will ask in full trust, I also will give you, if what you ask will be beneficial for the salvation of your soul.

[12] But if you will ask for the vain things of this world, then they will not be given to you, as you also would not give a sharp knife into the hands of a child to play with it, no matter how hard he would beg you, since you know well that your children would quickly and certainly harm themselves with the sharp knife.

[13] You also are still more or less inexperienced in spiritual things, and I am the One who knows best of all what you need to attain to eternal life. Therefore, seek first My Kingdom and its justice. Then all the rest will be added to you, for I always and eternally know what you need.

[14] However, if in the future you want to ask Me this or that, then ask Me something that is just, good and true.”

## 91. THE ALMIGHTINESS OF THE LORD AND ITS LIMITATIONS



**HE innkeeper** said: “O Lord, that I and the priest have asked You to provide this region with water, was it unjustified, not good or untruthful?”

[2] **I** said: “No, not at all, but if in the future you would ask Me for purely earthly things, then according to My order it would not be so justified, good and true, because the too big earthly advantages are always disadvantages for the soul.

[3] However, I did not come for the sake of the body, but only for the sake of the soul of man. Therefore, you should only ask

Me for what is really and eternally to the advantage of your soul. For to what advantage would it be for man if he would win all the dead treasures of this world, but because of that would surely suffer the greatest disadvantage to his soul? How will he be able to save him from death and the judgment of worldly matter?

[4] You say within yourselves now: ‘Lord, all things are very well possible to You, and also the matter of this Earth is Your work.’ You are right in this. Nevertheless, I say to you that with man not everything is, nor may be, possible to Me, for if everything were possible to Me with man, it would not have been necessary for Me to come as a perfect human being to you in this world and to teach you with My very own mouth.

[5] For I gave a free will to man, and showed to his reason what is true and good, and also what is evil and malicious, so that he would examine, give direction and develop himself. For only by that he will be a man and not an animal that is kept by My power and judgment, having to act according to My coercing laws as they were laid in it, having therefore no freedom, self-determination and no entrusted independence within itself.

[6] Apart from his body, man has received no coercing law from Me, but a totally free *law* in his will and a completely unlimited reason by which he can examine, test, understand and remember everything. And what he has then recognized as true and good, he can take as guideline for his actions.

[7] Thus, you also examine everything, keep what you have found to be true and good, and act and live by it, then you will develop yourselves and be always and eternally My true beloved children, and you will be just like Me, free and independent.

[8] So if you completely adopted My will that you know now, and if by that you also became strong in the living faith in Me, then also the whole creation will be submissive to you, just like it is to Me. And you never more will be able to transgress or sin against My eternal order, which is the foundation of all that



originates, is and exists. Out of that, will also exist the true and extremely blissful eternal life of your soul, and where I will be, you will be also as My beloved children and you will work like Me.

[9] For man to attain to the highest blissfulness, he must give direction to himself according to his completely free will and unlimited reason and understanding, and determine and develop himself according to My will that I revealed to him. And I cannot and may not restrain his free will with My almightiness or force him to act like with another creature that is still judged, which all of you will thoroughly and truthfully realize now.

[10] So with man, not everything is possible for Me, as you erroneously imagined, because I cannot intervene in the completely free will of man if man has to become and remain man forever according to My eternal and unchangeable order.

[11] If you well understood this, then it also will soon become completely clear and understandable to you for which things you should mainly ask Me. And if you ask Me, in full trust, for something good, it will also be given to you in the right measure. So always ask for the things that are beneficial for the true well being of your soul, and only very seldom and little for the things that are beneficial for your body.

[12] However, with this I do not mean that you may not pray to Me for help when you are in physical need. Yes, moreover I say to you that if you will show physically good deeds to your fellowman out of love for Me and in My name, that you will be richly rewarded with spiritual goods for the salvation of your soul, and if you will stay in Me, by the works of love in the living faith in Me, you will receive My power to heal the sick by laying your hands on them, and to free those from their torments who are possessed by evil spirits – and there are many, especially in this time.

[13] But you only can accomplish these things if you have a full and truly firm faith in Me. In short, with Me you will be able to

accomplish everything, but without Me nothing. Therefore, stay constantly in Me through love and through faith, then I will stay in you with My love, truth, power and might.”

## 92. THE CAPTAIN ASKS ABOUT HELL



AFTER those detailed words, they all thanked Me because I taught them with great patience about such important matters, and they promised Me firmly that they immediately would put that teaching into practice in their lives, even if it would cost them many battles.

[2] **They said:**<sup>1</sup> “Because no good and big matter for the sake of men’s life can be attained without effort and many battles. And here it concerns the attainment of the highest goal of life of men, and thus it is all the more important not to avoid the effort, work and battle.

[3] And we Romans are not the ones who avoid battles, and we do not fear an enemy, and that is why in a short time we will be victorious many times. Firstly over our own weaknesses that are our closest and often most persistent enemies, and then also easily the enemies outside of us, if You, o Lord, will not leave us with Your mercy. Not even if we, who are still human beings of this Earth, would come into some situation of life and would fail and fall.

[4] But do not let too great temptations come over us. For this we ask You now in the joyful hope that You will not leave this request unanswered.”

[5] **I said:** “Look, this Earth and the whole visible sky with everything that it contains will disappear, but My words and My promises will eternally not disappear. I will also never leave your justified prayers unanswered. But in this time, the Kingdom of God needs power, and only those who will pull it to themselves with power will fully possess it. Therefore, a lot of

---

<sup>1</sup> ‘They said’ was added.

inner and outer battles will be needed to completely attain it.

[6] But do not fear the enemies who can indeed kill the body of a person but they cannot harm the soul. If you want to fear someone, then fear God who can cast an evil soul into Hell.

[7] Now **the captain** came forward and said: ‘O Lord and Master, since You mentioned Hell – the place, as the Jews believe, where the evil souls will eternally be tortured by the worst devils, while also the gentiles know such place of horror that is called Orcus<sup>1</sup>, or also Tartarus – please explain to us also what is it about Hell, in a way that we also can understand, where is it, and who will come into that place of horror after his physical death?’

[8] Because now that we very clearly heard from Your mouth what kind of bliss people can expect who will live and act according to Your teaching, I believe that it is not less necessary to also get better acquainted with the fate of terror of those who on this world are definitely and incorrigibly Your enemies and adversaries, so that we also can tell and show them how, where and what they can expect for that in the beyond, to possibly bring them more easily back from their evil wrongness and win them for Your Kingdom.”

[9] **I** said: “My friend, although you are right to ask Me this, it is too difficult for the moment to tell you something about this that you can understand, because your inner love-spirit of life has not yet completely passed into your soul. But I still want to tell you as much as you and the others can understand. So listen and be very attentive.

[10] Look, as Heaven is everywhere where good people are who are beloved by Me and pleasing to Me, so also is Hell everywhere where you can find despisers of God, enemies of all that is good and true, liars, cheaters, evil thieves, robbers, murderers, misers, people who are lusting for power and eager for worldly honor, and malicious, loveless fornicators and

---

<sup>1</sup> Orcus was a god of the underworld, punisher of broken oaths.

adulterers.

[11] If you want to know what Hell looks like, you only have to look at the mind, the evil love and the evil will of a person in whom Hell prevails,. By that you will easily realize what it looks like in Hell which is actually a work of such person.

[12] In Hell everyone wants to be the first, be the highest and most unlimited ruler and commander, have the highest power and rulership, possess everything, and everyone has to obey him and work for him for a very little salary.

[13] It is obvious that less truth can be found there to enlighten such malicious nonsense and very evil blindness and stupidity than in this world where an imperious tyrant will by an enlightened truth also not repent of the injustice that he cruelly caused to people, so that he would abandon his golden throne, would go and do real penance, realize his injustice and would try to make up as much as possible for the injustice that he caused to so many people.

[14] Just try to convert such brute, then you will soon be convinced how he will come to meet you.

### **93. WHY OUTER FORMS HAVE TO BE DESTROYED**



IF even the clearest light of the truth cannot give any result, then with what other means can we convert such people without imprisoning their free will with almightiness, which cannot be done in any other way than by the complete removal of the totally wrong, malicious self-love from such person? And taking away that love from a person means the same as to entirely kill and destroy the whole person. But this is not in line with the eternal and unchangeable order, because everything – from the smallest to the largest, whether good or bad according to your human reason – can just as little be destroyed as God Himself, the initial eternal power and might and His love and wisdom from which everything originates.

[2] Transitions from imperfection to perfection are very well

possible because – talking in a human manner – God wants by that to give free independence to His great thoughts and ideas. Those transitions however are not destructions but only apparent destructions in the most outer, material sphere. Only the material forms, in which the spiritual life force is temporarily slumbering and hidden, and that are as if separated and isolated from the universal, divine, spiritual Being, can be destroyed, but their inner being never.

[3] Therefore, for what their appearance is concerned, it must be possible for these outer forms to be destroyed, because otherwise spiritual perfection – that means the development of the free, independent individuality of a being – would be completely impossible. Because for you men, who are now also in a last material form, the visible and perceptible creation is also nothing else but the temporarily tied up thoughts and ideas that I – if necessary and based on My love and wisdom – can change how and when I want.

[4] However, I am not doing this by some whim in order to give Myself in a human manner a certain imperious pleasure, but I am doing this out of eternal necessity according to My eternal wise order of love to give My thoughts and ideas a most complete and freest and individual, real, true independence. If there would be another way – but there is no other way, nor can there be any other way, which you cannot completely realize or understand now – then I certainly would have preferred it instead of this way that you consider as being too long and in a certain way difficult. But the way that you know is and remains the only possible, and therefore also the only true and best way, because only along this way can My goals be completely achieved.

[5] Now if people on this Earth do not want to submit to this order of Mine and want to create for themselves, based on their reason and free will, another order of which they think that it is better and wiser – which often happens here and in the beyond – they must blame themselves when they come into ever

worse instead of better conditions of life and existence. And when they finally went so much astray and are exhausted, they, unfortunately, cannot be helped in any other way except by the feeling of all imaginable tormenting situations which they prepared for themselves. And such feelings last until a soul turns into himself and realizes more and more that, because of his resistance against My order, his condition can by necessity never improve but only become worse.

[6] Look, My friend Pellagius, this kind of persistent resistance against My order out of free will, is the actual Hell with all its darkness, evil, wickedness and indescribable torments.

#### 94. THE REASON FOR SICKNESSES



LOOK at a person in this world who is physically in very good health. It is because that person is very healthy that he misuses his health by all kinds of excessive sensual pleasure and unnecessary powerful performances.

[2] Although many real experienced men come to him and say: ‘Friend, friend, do not misuse your health, for by such unnatural and unreasonable way of life you will soon and easily lose it, and once it is lost, no doctor and no medicine will be able to give it fully back to you, and you will stay a sick and suffering man for the rest of your life.’ **But the healthy man does not care about that and goes on with what he used to do.**

[3] After a few years, a serious physical sickness comes over him, and at first he is greatly angered because the sickness is very disturbing to him. He calls doctors, and they succeed to heal him, although not completely, but sufficiently to make it bearable. After his healing the doctors tell him very seriously: ‘Friend, be reasonable now and do not go back to your old way of life, otherwise a sickness will come over you again, much worse than the one of which we barely were able to save you. And then it will be more difficult to help you than this time.’

[4] **The healed person follows this advice for some time, but**

then his lust comes up again. Again he lives contrary to the order of life, and although he already discovers clear warnings that he will become seriously sick again, he nevertheless does not care and continues to sin against his already weakened nature.

[5] So by necessity he caught an even more serious sickness and is in terrible pain. The doctors come back again and try to heal him. But this time they do not succeed that easily, and they advise him to be patient, for since he did not listen to their advice, he must now blame himself that by his old thoughtlessness he now caught a much more serious and long lasting disease.

[6] This person must now suffer for more than 1 year and becomes very weak and desperate. But after a year he feels a little better, and now he swears by everything that is holy to him that he will never again ignore the advice of the doctors and other intelligent and experienced men.


[7] Yes, this second experience made this man much more reasonable and more careful, and he becomes stronger. But once he feels completely well again, he thinks within himself: ‘O, if I only once will give myself an old pleasure, this will certainly not make any difference.’ So he does it once, and this time he comes safely through it. And since he came safely through it this time, he thinks again: ‘Well now, since nothing went wrong, it certainly will not harm me a second and a third time.’ And so he sins a second, third and also a fourth time.

[8] And look, the old sickness throws him on his bed again for a few years, and no doctor is capable anymore to help him as the first and the second time.

[9] After 4 long years of terrible suffering, it becomes easier for him, more because he became used to the suffering than because of the medicines. And only now he realizes that his terrible suffering is a mercy from God by which he could be healed of all his carelessness, and by that he was able to make his soul more pure and more pleasing to God, because by the suffering

of the body, the soul of man becomes more humble, more patient and more serious, and he becomes stronger to master the sensuality of the flesh.

## **95. HOW DIFFICULT IT IS FOR SOULS WHO WENT ASTRAY TO REPENT IN THE BEYOND**

ND look, the soul of this man, whom I have shown you, became more sober, more patient, more humble, and more pure because of the suffering and pain that he caused to himself by living his life that is contrary to the order. And he became stronger to work on his inner life and examined himself more seriously and deeper. Also the souls in the big world of the beyond are in time purified by all kinds of sufferings, experiences and also pain that they only caused to themselves. *Purified* because they begin to feel a real aversion to their wrong way of acting, and abhor them more and more deeply in themselves. So they completely change their love, their will, and with that also their thinking and striving. They turn into themselves as into their true spirit of life, and in this manner they gradually pass over, as if step by step, to a clearer and happier existence.

[2] However, in the big world of the beyond it is more difficult and more troublesome than in this world, and with a lot of souls who sank too deep in their life that was against My order there will be needed a for you unimaginable long time before they will find in themselves the way to My eternal and unchanging order.

[3] On this Earth, every person stands on firm ground, and he has a great number of good and bad ways before him and all kinds of advisors, leaders and teachers around him. With only a little examination he can easily choose for all that is good. So he also can change his love and his will, and in this way he can – acting according to My order that becomes more and more clear to him – become more and more perfected. But in the other life,



the soul of a person has only himself and is the creator of his own world, just like in a dream.

[4] So in such world there can also be no other ways than the one which a soul, out of his love, will and fantasy, has made for himself.

[5] If his love and will are, according to My order, good and just – even if it is only for the greatest part – such soul will soon, after a few bitter experiences that he probably made on some way that is contrary to My order, of course choose earlier and easier for the way of the order. Then he will continue to walk on it, and so he will pass over from his existence of fantasy and dream into a true and real existence, where, in the increasing bright light, everything will become more and more understandable to him – things that before could never come into his mind.

[6] And such soul, who already became purer because he improved his life, will then of course make a quick and easy progress. But on the other hand, a soul who lives in a world of dreams and evil fantasies – which originated from his own love and his own will, both contrary to the order, and where often hardly half way within the order exists or can exist – will have it very difficult on his way, a way which is hardly noticeably and which passes only half within the order. After a long time he will have it very difficult to choose a way in himself that passes completely within the order and that leads to the true light of life, and to raise himself entirely within My order on that way on which he still will have to fight against a lot of obstacles.

[7] Then how will a soul fare in the beyond who has not even half or a quarter of a way within My order, and who will thus also not be able to find one? Look, this is already the actual Hell.


[8] Such soul will pass on all his numberless evil ways of his dark world of dreams and fantasies and will even want to exalt himself to rule over Me.

[9] But since he not only will accomplish nothing by that, but

will only lose more and more, he also becomes more and more angry, furious, and in an ever greater rage, more revengeful, and by that also more and more dark and powerless.

[10] Now just imagine the numberless, disorderly evil ways in the foolish fantasy world of such soul. When will he have experienced them all until he comes to a point where he will realize a little that all his attempts, strivings and efforts are useless and foolish, and awaken a certain desire and activity in him to in the future rather obey instead of wanting to rule over everything himself?

## 96. THE FUTILE ATTEMPT TO EDUCATE A TYRANT

UST consider the first mentioned imperious tyrant whose thinking and striving was only focused on conquering the whole world to make all other rulers his lowliest slaves and to let himself be honored and worshipped by all the nations on Earth as a God who commands everything. Gather a mighty army, attack his countries, take away all his cities and castles, finally imprison him and say then to him: ‘Look, proud and very vain fool of a king, you wanted to conquer the whole world and make slaves of all the other rulers of nations, now you are in my power and you must conform to my will. But I do not want to be hard against you. I want to give you mercy as justice if you will humiliate yourself in your mind and will become a man who wants to do good to all his fellowmen and if you want to make up for all the injustice that you have often and unprecedented committed against them. Although I will take you into custody and watch all the decisions you will take that reflect your thoughts and strivings. If I notice that you have completely changed, I have the power and the good will to bring you back to your kingdom and put you on the throne as a true ruler – this unto salvation, but never more unto disaster of the people who suffered under your tyranny.’

[2] And look now further on, My friend Pellagius. On this, your

prisoner will promise you to do everything whatever you will ask him to do, for in return you promised to give him back his kingdom and his throne. But do you think that his mind will become entirely different? Apparently yes, but in reality certainly not, for if you will put him again on the throne, all his strivings will be secretly directed to take revenge on you. Because to humiliate an arrogant and proud king from the highest glittering throne to far below the level of beggary means the same as making a perfect devil out of him who can almost not be helped anymore in the kingdom of eternal darkness.

[3] If such person is completely filled with the greatest anger and irreconcilable renegefulness, whether he is a king or a slave, he cannot be converted anymore, nor can he be improved. It is best to suffer those kinds of people with all patience and to admonish them at some opportunity, as I did Myself by the mouth of My many prophets.

[4] If they do not care – as usual – a few sensitive chastisements should come over them, by which it will at least become half clear to them that they caused it to themselves. If despite of that, they do not change, they should be wiped off from the Earth, which is of course always only My decision because I am the only One who can most clearly see when the measure of abominations of such person is full.

[5] If you will deeply think about what I said and showed you now about Hell, it will become clear to you what Hell actually is, and how and where it is.

[6] As a good person – living virtuously and piously according to God's will – carries Heaven as the Kingdom of God indestructibly in himself, so also, the definite adversary of God's order carries Hell indestructibly in himself, for this is his love and his unwavering will, and thus also his life. Did you understand this well now?"

## 97. A PROPHECY OF THE LORD ABOUT THE LAST TIME



**OW Pellagius** said: “Yes, o Lord and Master, we thank You all for this light, which is of course not suitable for making a good human heart joyful. But it is still good that an evil person judges and condemns himself, and entirely isolates himself forever from what is good.

[2] But if in this case, very mighty angel spirits would visibly be sent from the Heavens to such people and would clearly show their injustice and also confirm their mission by great signs, then it would be very strange if they would not examine themselves and repent.”

[3] **I** said: “Yes, My friend, it is to your heart’s great honor to think like that, but the wish, that you have spoken out, was in this world – and now and then in the other world – oftentimes accomplished by Me, and for those who still could be saved, it often had the best and very lasting effect, but for those who were already completely hardened in evil, not at all.

[4] Just look at the story of Sodom and Gomorrah. At that time, angels really descended from the Heavens to Lot. And what could they accomplish? Read and you will find it. Read what happened at the time of Noah. Who, apart from Noah and his family, cared about it? What did Moses do in front of the tyrannical pharaoh? And this one became more and more angry and did not refrain from persecuting Moses and the Israelites, as badly and as long as possible till the sea drowned him and his army. Look at the story about Jericho. Great signs were done under *the reign of* Joshua, and apart from a whore, nobody cared about it. Then read the stories of all the big and little prophets, then you will see how little they accomplished with the actual hard sinners against God’s order.

[5] But let us not look at all the things that flew by in time on this Earth, but let us look at the great unique present time.

[6] Look at My disciples. Who are they? Mostly poor fishermen. Some are from Jerusalem and followed Me for already a long

time now. But where are the actual great rulers of this city who also heard My words, and wherein, in the presence of one of the greatest angels from the Heavens, I, as the Lord Myself, performed great signs before their eyes, as well as the angel beside Me?

[7] What did it all accomplish? Look, that they now obsessively persecute Me in great haste and try to kill Me.

[8] I finally – as I explained to you before – will also let that happen to Me, that means to My body, and will resurrect on the 3<sup>rd</sup> day, and I will go to all My friends and comfort and strengthen them. And still, those hard ones will not care about it but will also persecute My friends with the same haste. And this just as long till the measure of their abominations will be full and I will wipe them off from the Earth.

[9] In the future, until the end of the world, I will send My messengers from the Heavens, so that My word would not be destroyed and would not be too much slandered by the evil children of this world. But they<sup>1</sup> also will be more or less persecuted for the sake of My name, till the time when I will come back as a flash of lightning that from sunrise to sunset<sup>2</sup> will very brightly illuminate everything that does good or bad things on this Earth.

[10] In that time I will let a big sifting come over the whole face of the Earth, and only the good and pure ones will be saved.

[11] From this you can see that I always and very faithfully have fulfilled your wish since the very first beginning of men. And I am certainly fulfilling it now, and I likewise will fulfill it until the end of times of this world. Nevertheless, the will of man will remain free, and every person will in every time have to endure the temptation of the life of the flesh, will have to deny all the desires and lusts of the flesh as much as possible, and will have to be humble and patient in everything, in order to truly preserve

---


<sup>1</sup> The messengers.

<sup>2</sup> Sunrise: east – sunset: west.

and complete My Kingdom in himself. For everyone who wants to come to Me, will have to be as perfect as I am perfect, and in order to become like that, I Myself came personally to you in this world and show all of you the way to it.

[12] So do not let yourselves be blinded and enticed by the world, by its matter and the lusts of your flesh, so that the judgment of the world, its matter and your flesh would not awaken in you, and with that the actual Hell, which is the true, 2<sup>nd</sup> death of the soul.”

## 98. THE SPIRITUAL ENVIRONMENT OF THE LORD

 HESE words of Mine made a deep impression on the soul of the Romans who were present, and **they all** said within themselves: “Yes, yes, He is right in everything, and we human beings are very important to Him, and we are no joke or toy of His divine power.”

[2] **Then the captain said again to Me:** “Lord and Master over everything, during Your explanation that was very important and full of divine content, You also mentioned that one of the most perfected angels from the Heavens traveled around with You for a long time, visibly before everyone, and he faithfully and truthfully testified that in You, the One, who was promised by the mouth of the prophets for already a long time, came into this world to the people, which also we gentiles knew for a long time. Is it maybe now also possible that You, o Lord and Master, would call here also for us an angel from Your Heavens, so that he would appear before us and we could see him?”

[3] **I said:** “O certainly, although the appearance of an angel will not make your faith in Me stronger than it is now.

[4] **But I do not have to call that angel from some faraway Heaven as you think, for where I am, is also the supreme Heaven with the numberless multitudes of angels who surround Me forever.**

[5] **I will open your eyes for a few moments, then you will see**

My environment. And so My will be done.”

[6] When I had said that, they all saw how countless many angels were as if in wide circles standing, sitting and kneeling on light clouds while they all looked at Me, glorifying and praising Me.

[7] This appearance stunned the Romans, and they asked Me to close Heaven again for their still unworthy eyes. So I immediately closed their inner sight, and so they did not see anymore angels on light clouds, but next to Me they saw Raphael in his known form of a young man, clothed with flesh and blood.

[8] Fully amazed about the great charm of this young man, the captain asked Me who he was and from where he suddenly appeared.

[9] I said: “This is the same angel who is around Me for already a long time to furthermore awaken the faith when necessary and to instruct the people as visible as now, and who also performed great signs. If you wish, you also can talk with him, just like you talk with Me.”

[10] Then the captain went to Raphael and asked him if he was always around Me to serve Me.

[11] **Raphael** said: “The Lord does not need our services, but we nevertheless serve Him in all love by serving you people according to His will, and by protecting you against the too strong persecutions of Hell.

[12] The more we have to do in the name of the Lord, on this Earth as well as the still numberless other earths in the endless space of creation, the happier and blissful we are. Do likewise, then you will become what I am and able to do what I can do.”

[13] **On this, the captain** said: “I already know what you are, but I still do not know what you can do.”

[14] **The angel** said: “What the Lord can do Himself, I can do. Although, out of myself I can do as little as you can do, but from the will of the Lord, which fills and forms my whole being, also I can do everything. Make you also the will of the Lord

completely your own, then you also will be able to do what I can do.”

[15] Then Raphael suddenly disappeared, and the captain took his few words well at heart.

[16] Then a messenger came from the inn who invited us for the midday meal, and we went immediately to the inn where the prepared meal was waiting for us.

## 99. THE CITIZENS OF APHEK ADMIRE THE ACTUAL FERTILE ENVIRONMENT



AFTER we partook of the well-prepared midday meal, at which also the gentile priests took part, who stayed behind in the inn, several other prominent inhabitants of this city came to the inn, and these still did not know anything about Me.

[2] And one of them said in full amazement to the innkeeper (a citizen): “Do you still not know that the whole wide environment of this city became green and blossoms? Could that be the result of the earthquake, or did the gods take care of this region as a result of the prayers of our priests and the offerings we voluntarily brought to them? It really is not a joke, but complete seriousness.”

[3] **The innkeeper said:** “You are not telling us anything new, for we knew that also and are extremely glad about it. But we still know more than you. Go to my hill, which is in the west, outside the walls of our city, there you will see a new, abundantly streaming water spring with which our whole big city can be more than sufficiently provided with excellent water. So we will do our utmost best as soon as possible to direct the water to the city to fill our already completely dried up water tanks. We will not lack water and we will no more have to let our flocks search for their meager feed in the deep clefts and valleys. Go outside and convince yourself.”

[4] When the citizens heard this from our innkeeper, they bowed



before the captain, whom they knew well, and they all went immediately to the mentioned place.

[5] When they saw the abundant spring, they were extremely amazed, and **one of them**, who still strongly believed in the pagan gods, said: “Listen, now before anything else, we should consult with the priests to construct a temple for Neptune on this hill as soon as possible, as gratitude for the great mercy and blessing that he showed us now. And also – to the great honor of that god – a personal Neptune priest should be maintained by us, and we then also want to and will build a big home for him near this spring.”

[6] **Another one** said: “We will do everything that our priests will tell us to do, for only they know what has to be done. We do not know that. Therefore, we will do according to our strength what they will decide in the name of the gods.”

[7] They all agreed on that, went into the city and said this also to many other citizens, for no one in the whole city knew about this miracle, firstly because it only existed a few hours, and secondly because this spot was rarely visited because of its already mentioned infertility.

[8] When also the other citizens heard about this spring, everyone, young and old, went to the place of the miracle and watched it till almost the evening, and thus we were spared from obtrusive people, and after the midday meal we could unhindered and easily make preparations to travel on.

[9] Before I left this place with My disciples, I told the captain and also the priests what the citizens at the well were discussing about with each other, and that the priests would know now what to do to prevent paganism from rooting deeper than was already the case with these gentiles by this event.

[10] **Then the captain** said: “That, o Lord and Master, we will know how to prevent with your definite continuous help. In worldly respect I am the only commander here, and I only am under chief Cornelius, who has his residence in Capernaum for the moment, and the supreme governor Cyrenius, who is usually

staying in Tyre and from time to time also in Sidon.

[11] Since they both know You very well, o Lord and Master, and are fully standing behind Your holy task of life for the sake of our people and will thus not hinder the spreading of Your teaching, we do not have to be afraid to come across resistance during our work for the highest well being of men.”

[12] I said: “The work for My Kingdom will not be without resistance, but if you come across all kinds of small and now and then also strong resistance, then do not lose courage, trust or faith in Me, then you will not have worked in vain. For in this time – as I already told you – in which the might of Hell on this Earth has become very strong among the people, My Kingdom needs energy and great efforts, and only those who will pull it to themselves with energy will have it as their possession.

[13] Thus, also over you will come all kinds of trials and temptations, but when they come, then remember that I told you in advance.

[14] So be courageous and fight with wisdom and always with all love against the raids of the world in you and also outside of you. Then, with My continuous help, you will reap abundantly golden fruits for your work for Heaven, and your joy about it will be great and everlasting.

[15] Every good worker is worth his salary, and when the work is heavier and more difficult, the worker will be worth of a greater and better salary – which you surely can understand. But the one who does not want to work anymore because the effort is too much for him, can also not expect a salary and will then also not eat but suffer hunger.

[16] If the physical hunger is already such torment, the spiritual hunger will be a much greater torment for everyone who already ate from the bread of the Heavens but who then did not make any effort to obtain a greater provision of this bread so that his soul can live from this provision forever.

[17] The true bread and the true drink from the Heavens am I, in the eternal truth of everything that I taught you.

[18] Although you received a greater provision of this bread and wine, take care now you yourselves that it will not diminish. In order to strongly prevent this you should continuously be active in My name. My love will strengthen you and My wisdom will guide you.”

[19] After these words of Mine, we all stood up, and they all thanked Me with many tears for the instruction and for all the other blessings I had shown them.

## 100. THE LORD LEAVES APHEK



AFTER these many expressions of gratitude, the captain asked Me if he could escort Me further to the next place.

[2] I said: “Friend Pellagius, you have done enough so far, as well as all those who were with you. Now you can go back to your own region and do your work, as well as the work wherein I appointed you.

[3] If you go back to Pella, you will find much work to do. I will now travel on, only with My disciples, and we will find our way also elsewhere. So remain for a few days here and support those priests in their task for My Kingdom, which will be difficult at first, but return to Pella after that.

[4] Soon strangers and also Jews will come to you. But do then not make a big sensation about My deeds, and do not make Me unnecessarily known before time.”

[5] When I had said that to the captain, I gave a sign to the disciples to leave the inn, to move on to the east and to wait for Me outside the city.

[6] Then the disciples took their belongings and went ahead, except for John who stayed with Me and went later with Me to follow the other disciples.

[7] I stayed behind for the short time of about a quarter of an hour for the sake of Veronica, to comfort her, for she became very sad because of My departure.

[8] When Veronica became cheerful again, I also left the inn and went – only escorted by the captain and My disciple John – after the disciples who left before us.

[9] They waited for Me at the hill we had visited in the morning, and when I arrived, the captain took leave of Me and went then with his followers into the city. We also moved on quickly, to the east, to another city of which the name is not so important.

[10] Many will now ask what influence My teaching had in the course of time on the gentiles in Aphek, what happened and how long it lasted before these gentiles accepted completely the faith in Me. Concerning this, it very briefly can be said that already after only 1 year, no gentile lived anymore in this whole city or in its rather vast environment.

[11] Although at first there was hard resistance, but since the people were very well instructed by the priests and also now and then by the captain, they soon realized the old errors and they felt very happy to know the pure truth, and I certainly did not neglect to give My power with words and deeds to every loyal confessor of My teaching.

[12] After My resurrection I also visited these places in particular and to the inhabitants I gave good comfort and the right power to work in My name.

[13] At the time of the great need in Jerusalem and in the whole of Judea, the city of Aphek served also as a refuge place for the fleeing Jews who completely adhered to My teaching, and all those who came here were well accommodated.

[14] In the course of time the captain himself established a community without making any worldly sensation, which later, when I called him to Me, carried also his name.

[15] After My resurrection he himself still lived about 30 years and was appointed chief over all the 10 big cities between which were also many smaller cities which were all counted with the 10 cities.

[16] This is a short overview which shows what happened with My teaching in these cities and places in the course of time.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. THE CAPTAIN ASKS FOR THE PURPOSE OF THE STRUGGLE IN NATURE.....	2
2. THE MOST IMPORTANT REASONS FOR THE VARIETY IN THE CREATION ON EARTH .....	6
3. THE SUBSTANCE OF THE SOUL AND HIS GRADUAL LIBERATION FROM MATTER .....	8
4. THE COMPOSITION OF THE HUMAN SOUL .....	10
5. THE DECLINE OF THE PURE DOCTRINE .....	12
6. THE SUGGESTION OF THE CAPTAIN TO UNMASK THE FALSE PROPHETS .....	15
7. THE NEW TESTAMENT. THE WHORE OF BABEL. THE SPIRITUAL CIRCUMSTANCES IN THE AGES AFTER CHRIST UP TO THE 2 <sup>ND</sup> HALF OF THE 19 <sup>TH</sup> CENTURY. THE SPIRITUAL CHANGE BY THE SINING-IN OF THE DIVINE LIGHT. ....	18
8. THEY THREW AWAY THE CORNERSTONE. ITS TIME HAS COME. THE END OF THE FALSE PROPHETS. ....	22
9. THE IMPOSSIBILITY OF MORE RELIGIOUS WARS .....	25
10. THE FUTURE OF THE CEREMONIAL CHURCH.....	28
11. THE FUTURE OF THE STATES OF EUROPE AND AMERICA .....	32
12. THE ORDER OF DEVELOPMENT .....	34

## **THE LORD NEAR CAESAREA PHILIPPI**

13. THE DOUBTS OF THE LORD'S FOLLOWERS .....	37
14. THE PRAYER OF THE LORD .....	39

## **THE LORD IN THE MOUNTAIN CITY PELLA**

15. THE LORD WITH THE INNKEEPER IN PELLA .....	42
16. THE LORD IN THE SCHOOL IN PELLA .....	43
17. THE EVENING MEAL IN THE INN .....	45
18. THE LORD AND THE ROMAN CAPTAIN .....	48
19. THE HEALED VERONICA THANKS THE LORD .....	52
20. THE LORD WARNS THE RABBI .....	55
21. THE DISCIPLES AND THE LORD TEACH THE INHABITANTS OF PELLA .....	57

22.	THE LORD WITH THE CAPTAIN VIEW THE DAWNING MORNING ON A HILL .....	59
23.	THE DISCIPLES SEARCH FOR THE LORD .....	62
24.	THE CAPTAIN COMFORTS THE DISCIPLES .....	65
25.	VERONICA'S MORNING MEAL .....	67
26.	THE IMPORTANCE OF THE LORD'S TEACHING IN RELATION TO HIS DEEDS .....	69
27.	THE OBJECTIONS OF THE SUBOFFICER .....	71
28.	THE IMPORTANCE OF THE TRUTH .....	74
29.	THE QUESTION OF THE CAPTAIN PELLAGIUS ABOUT POSSESSION .....	76
30.	TWO POSSESSED MEN ARE BROUGHT TO THE LORD .....	77
31.	PELLAGIUS HEALS A POSSESSED PERSON .....	79
32.	THE LORD DRIVES OUT 17 SPIRITS FROM A POSSESSED PERSON .....	82
33.	THE NATURE OF THE 5 SPIRITS THAT WERE CAST OUT FIRST... ..	84
34.	THE BACKGROUND OF THE 17 SPIRITS .....	85
35.	THE LORD ADMONISHES THE LEADER OF THE SPIRITS THAT WERE CAST OUT .....	88
36.	THE DANGERS OF EATING IMPURE FOOD .....	90

### **THE LORD IN ABILA**

37.	THE TRIP TO ABILA .....	93
38.	THE LORD IN THE HOUSE OF THE 10 JEWISH FAMILIES .....	95
39.	THE TESTIMONY OF THE ELDEST ABOUT THE LORD .....	97
40.	THE SPIRITUAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THE RENOVATION OF THE CRUMBLD CASTLE .....	99
41.	THE CASTLE OF MELCHISEDECH .....	102
42.	FROM THE TIME OF THE KING OF SALEM .....	104
43.	THE EVENING MEAL IN THE OLD DINING HALL .....	106
44.	THE NOISE BEFORE THE HOUSE OF THE JEWS .....	108
45.	THE TRUE CELEBRATION OF THE SABBATH .....	109
46.	THE QUESTION HOW TO TEACH THE SUPERSTITIOUS GENTILES .....	111
47.	THE ART OF TEACHING .....	114
48.	THE MAYOR OF ABILA .....	115
49.	THE CAPTAIN INSTRUCTS THE MAYOR ABOUT THE LORD ....	117
50.	LOVE AND PATIENCE, THE 2 GREATEST VIRTUES OF MAN ....	119
51.	THE MIDDAY MEAL AND THE DEPARTURE OF THE LORD .....	121

## **THE LORD IN GOLAN**

52.	THE ARRIVAL IN GOLAN .....	124
53.	THE LORD HEALS THE SICK WOMAN AND THE 2 DAUGHTERS OF THE INNKEEPER .....	127
54.	THE INNKEEPER AND HIS WIFE ARE SURPRISED ABOUT THE MIRACULOUS POWER OF THE LORD .....	129
55.	THE NATURE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD .....	131
56.	THE INNKEEPER AND THE CAPTAIN ARE INSTRUCTED .....	133
57.	PREDICTION OF A COMING STORM .....	135
58.	THE NIGHTLY STORM .....	138
59.	OUTSIDE AFTER THE STORM .....	140
60.	THE CAPTAIN SPEAKS ABOUT HOW ONE SHOULD SEEK GOD	142
61.	THE INTENTIONS OF THE NEIGHBORS .....	145
62.	THE AFTERMATH OF THE STORM AND THE EARTHQUAKE ....	147
63.	THE WORDS OF THE NEIGHBORS ABOUT THE POWER OF THE GALILEAN .....	150
64.	THE RETURN TO THE INN .....	153
65.	THE CAPTAIN ASKS HOW HE SHOULD HANDLE THE PRIESTS .	156
66.	THE IMPORTANCE OF LOVE .....	159
67.	THE PAGAN PRIESTS DEFEND THEIR BEHAVIOR ON THE STORMY NIGHT .....	162
68.	THE CAPTAIN INSTRUCTS THE PRIESTS ABOUT THE USELESSNESS OF PAGAN WORSHIP .....	165
69.	THE PRIESTS ARE QUESTIONED BY THEIR COLLEAGUES .....	167
70.	THE CONCLUSION OF THE PRIEST .....	170
71.	THE GRATITUDE OF THE PRIESTS .....	172
72.	HOW TRUE DISCIPLES OF THE LORD SHOULD BEHAVE .....	175

## **THE LORD IN APHEK**

73.	DEPARTURE TO APHEK .....	178
74.	WITH THE ROMAN INNKEEPER IN APHEK .....	180
75.	THE THOUGHTS OF THE INNKEEPER CONCERNING THE LORD .....	183
76.	THE LORD HEALS THE SICK IN THE INN .....	185
77.	THE LORD EXPLAINS THE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OF THE PRIEST .....	187
78.	THE LORD TEACHES ABOUT THE DOWNFALL OF MANKIND ..	189
79.	THE RIGHT SEARCHING FOR GOD .....	191

80.	THE LORD SHOWS THE RIGHT WAY TO SEARCH GOD .....	193
81.	THE PRIEST JUSTIFIES HIS WORLDLY LIFE .....	195
82.	THE FORMER REVELATIONS OF THE LORD TO THE PRIEST ...	198
83.	THE OBJECTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN CONCERNING THE BEAUTIES OF NATURE .....	200
84.	THE REQUEST AND THE PROMISE OF THE PRIESTS .....	203
85.	A MIRACLE WITH A SYMBOLIC MEANING FOR THE PRIESTS ..	207
86.	THE DISCIPLE ANDREAS SPEAKS ABOUT THE WORKS AND THE WORDS OF THE LORD .....	209
87.	THE MIRACULOUS MORNING MEAL .....	212
88.	ABOUT THE ELIMINATION OF PAGANISM .....	214
89.	NEIGHBORLY LOVE .....	217
90.	THE PROMISE AND ADMONITION OF THE LORD .....	220
91.	THE ALMIGHTINESS OF THE LORD AND ITS LIMITATIONS .....	222
92.	THE CAPTAIN ASKS ABOUT HELL .....	225
93.	WHY OUTER FORMS HAVE TO BE DESTROYED .....	227
94.	THE REASON FOR SICKNESSES .....	229
95.	HOW DIFFICULT IT IS FOR SOULS WHO WENT ASTRAY TO REPENT IN THE BEYOND .....	231
96.	THE FUTILE ATTEMPT TO EDUCATE A TYRANT .....	233
97.	A PROPHECY OF THE LORD ABOUT THE LAST TIME .....	235
98.	THE SPIRITUAL ENVIRONMENT OF THE LORD .....	237
99.	THE CITIZENS OF APHEK ADMIRE THE ACTUAL FERTILE ENVIRONMENT .....	239
100.	THE LORD LEAVES APHEK .....	242